Owner's Manual

4-port 10/100/1000Base-T + 2-slot Gigabit SFP Managed Industrial Gigabit Ethernet Switch

Model: NGI-M04C2





surge protector in our monthly drawing! tripplite.com/warranty



1111 W. 35th Street, Chicago, IL 60609 USA • tripplite.com/support Copyright © 2021 Tripp Lite. All rights reserved.

COPYRIGHT

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, whether electronic, mechanical, photo copying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

FCC WARNING



This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class A device, pursuant to part 15 of FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference

to radio communication. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case, the user will be required to correct the interference at the user's own expense.

CE

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

HOT & COLD WARNING

The Switch surface will be getting very hot or cold depend on the operating environment. Please take special care when touch to the working switch.



Take special care to read and understand all the content in the warning boxes.



Do not work on the system or connect or disconnect cables during periods of lightning activity.



Before working on equipment that is connected to power lines, remove jewelry (including rings, necklaces, and watches). Metal objects will heat up when connected to power and ground and can cause serious burns or weld the metal object to the terminals.



Do not stack the chassis on any other equipment. If the chassis falls, it can cause severe bodily injury and equipment damage.



An exposed wire lead from a DC-input power source can conduct harmful levels of electricity. Be sure that no exposed portion of the DC-input power source wire extends from the terminal block plug.



Ethernet cables must be shielded when used in a central office environment.



If a redundant power system (RPS) is not connected to the switch, install an RPS connector cover on the back of the switch.



Read the wall-mounting instructions carefully before beginning installation. Failure to use the correct hardware or to follow the correct procedures could result in a hazardous situation to people and damage to the system.



Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit.



Read the installation instructions before connecting the system to the power source.



To prevent bodily injury when mounting or servicing this unit in a rack, you must take special precautions to ensure that the system remains stable. The following guidelines are provided to ensure your safety:

- This unit should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.
- When mounting this unit in a partially filled rack, load the rack from the bottom to the top with the heaviest component at the bottom of the rack.
- ✓ If the rack is provided with stabilizing devices, install the stabilizers before mounting or servicing the unit in the rack.



This unit might have more than one power supply connection. All connections must be removed to de-energize the unit.



Only trained and qualified personnel should be allowed to install, replace, or service this equipment.



When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.



Voltages that present a shock hazard may exist on Power over Ethernet (PoE) circuits if interconnections are made using uninsulated exposed metal contacts, conductors, or terminals. Avoid using such interconnection methods, unless the exposed metal parts are located within a restricted access location and users and service people who are authorized within the restricted access location are made aware of the hazard. A restricted access area can be accessed only through the use of a special tool, lock and key or other means of security.



No user-serviceable parts inside. Do not open.



This equipment must be grounded. Never defeat the ground conductor or operate the equipment in the absence of a suitably installed ground conductor. Contact the appropriate electrical inspection authority or an electrician if you are uncertain that suitable grounding is available.

Table of Contents

1.	ABOUT THIS MANUAL	13
1.1.	INTRODUCTION	13
1.2.	PURPOSE	
1.3.	TERMS/ USAGE	
1.0.		
2.	ABOUT THE NGI-M04C2	14
2.1.	FEATURES	14
2.2.	SPECIFICATIONS	
3.	HARDWARE DESCRIPTION	16
3.1. 3.2.	CONNECTORS	
3.2. 3.3.	INSTALLATION LED INDICATORS	
	DIP Switches	
3.4.	DIP SWITCHES	ZZ
4.	SYSTEM STATUS	23
4.1.	CONSOLE PORT	23
4.2.	TELNET	
4.3.	HOW TO ENTER THE CLI?	
4.4.	CLI COMMAND CONCEPT	
4.5.	MANAGEMENT VIA INTERNET BROWSER INTERFACE	26
4.6.	System Information	27
4.6.1	. CLI CONFIGURATION	27
4.6.2	WEB CONFIGURATION	28
5.	BASIC SETTINGS	30
5.1.	System Settings	
5.1.1		
5.1.1		
5.1.1		
5.1.2		
5.1.2		
5.1.2		
5.1.3	SNTP	35
5.1.3	.1. CLI CONFIGURATION	35
5.1.3	.2. WEB CONFIGURATION	37
5.1.4	•. MANAGEMENT HOST	39
5.1.4	.1. CLI CONFIGURATION	39
5.1.4	.2. WEB CONFIGURATION	40
5.2.	MAC MANAGEMENT	41
5.2.1	. STATIC MAC	42

5.2.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	42
5.2.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	43
5.2.2.	MAC TABLE	44
5.2.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	44
5.2.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	44
5.2.3.	Age Time	46
5.2.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	46
5.2.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	46
5.3. Po	RT MIRROR	47
5.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	47
5.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	48
5.4. Po	RT SETTINGS	50
5.4.1.	GENERAL SETTINGS	51
5.4.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	51
5.4.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	54
5.4.2.	INFORMATION	55
5.4.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	
5.4.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	56
6. ADV	ANCED SETTINGS	58

6.1. BA	NDWIDTH CONTROL	58
6.1.1.	QoS	58
6.1.1.1.	PORT PRIORITY	
6.1.1.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	61
6.1.1.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	61
6.1.1.2.	IP DIFFSERV (DSCP)	63
6.1.1.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	64
6.1.1.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	65
6.1.1.3.	PRIORITY/QUEUE MAPPING	66
6.1.1.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	66
6.1.1.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	67
6.1.1.4.	SCHEDULE MODE	68
6.1.1.4.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	68
6.1.1.4.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	69
6.1.2.	RATE LIMITATION	70
6.1.2.1.	STORM CONTROL	70
6.1.2.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	70
6.1.2.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	72
6.1.2.2.	BANDWIDTH LIMITATION	73
6.1.2.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	73
6.1.2.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	74
6.2. IG	MP SNOOPING	75
6.2.1.	IGMP SNOOPING	75
6.2.1.1.	GENERAL SETTINGS	76
6.2.1.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	76
6.2.1.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	76
6.2.1.2.	PORT SETTINGS	77
6.2.1.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	78
6.2.1.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	79
6.2.1.3.	QUERIER SETTINGS	81

6.2.1.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	81
6.2.1.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	82
6.2.2.	IGMP SNOOPING FILTERING	83
6.2.2.1.	GENERAL SETTINGS	83
6.2.2.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	83
6.2.2.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	83
6.2.2.2.	MULTICAST GROUP	85
6.2.2.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	85
6.2.2.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	85
6.2.2.3.	PORT SETTINGS	86
6.2.2.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	86
6.2.2.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	87
6.2.3.	MULTICAST ADDRESS	88
6.2.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	89
6.2.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	90
	AN	91
6.3.1.	PORT ISOLATION	91
6.3.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	91
6.3.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	92
6.3.2.	802.1Q VLAN	93
6.3.2.1.	VLAN SETTINGS	94
6.3.2.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	94
6.3.2.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	95
6.3.2.2.	TAG SETTINGS	97
6.3.2.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	97
6.3.2.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	98
6.3.2.3.	PORT SETTINGS	99
6.3.2.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	99
6.3.2.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS 1	00
6.3.3.	MAC VLAN 1	101
6.3.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS 1	101
6.3.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS 1	02
6.3.4.	Q-IN-Q VLAN (VLAN STACKING) 1	103
6.3.4.1.	VLAN STACKING 1	105
6.3.4.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS 1	105
6.3.4.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS 1	106
6.3.4.2.	PORT-BASED Q-IN-Q 1	07
6.3.4.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	108
6.3.4.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	109
6.4. DH	ICP OPTION (OPTION 82)1	11
6.4.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
6.4.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	14
6.5. DH	ICP RELAY1	16
6.5.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	117
6.5.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	118
6.6. Du	JAL HOMING1	19
6.6.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	121
6.6.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
6.7. EF		24
6.7.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	124
6.7.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS 1	124

6.8. EF	XPS	126
6.8.1.	RING SETTINGS	128
6.8.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	128
6.8.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	129
6.8.2.	INSTANCE	131
6.8.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	131
6.8.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	132
6.9. LI	NK AGGREGATION	133
6.9.1.	STATIC TRUNK	
6.9.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	133
6.9.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	134
6.9.2.	LACP	135
6.9.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	136
6.9.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	137
6.9.3.	LACP INFORMATION	138
6.9.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	138
6.9.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	138
6.10. Lo	OOP DETECTION	140
6.10.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
6.10.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	142
6.11. M	ODBUS TCP	
6.11.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
6.11.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	148
6.12. ST	P / RSTP	149
6.12.1.	GENERAL SETTINGS	154
6.12.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	154
6.12.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	155
6.12.2.	PORT PARAMETERS	156
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
6.12.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	158
6.12.3.	STP STATUS	160
6.12.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	160
6.12.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	160
	CURITY	
	SOURCE GUARD	
7.1.1.	DHCP SNOOPING	-
7.1.1.1.	DHCP SNOOPING	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS.	
	PORT SETTINGS	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS.	
	SERVER SCREENING	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS.	
7.1.2.	BINDING TABLE	
7.1.2.1.	STATIC ENTRY	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
/.1.2.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	Γ/Γ

7.1.2.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 72 7.1.2.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 72 7.1.3. ARP INSPECTION. 73 7.1.3.1. ARP INSPECTION. 74 7.1.3.1. ARP INSPECTION. 74 7.1.3.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 74 7.1.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 77 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 77 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 77 7.1.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 77 7.1.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 77 7.1.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 78 7.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 78 7.3.3.802.1X 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196<	7.1.2.2	2. BINDING TABLE	
7.12.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 172 7.1.3. ARP INSPECTION 173 7.1.3.1. ARP INSPECTION 174 7.1.3.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 174 7.1.3.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 174 7.1.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 177 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2. ILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 178 7.2. ACCESS CONTROL LIST 179 7.1.2. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 180 7.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 180 7.2.3. 802.1x 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS. 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY. 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 <tr< td=""><td>,</td><td></td><td></td></tr<>	,		
7.1.3. ARP INSPECTION. 173 7.1.3.1. ARP INSPECTION. 174 7.1.3.1. ARP INSPECTION. 174 7.1.3.1. ARP INSPECTION. 174 7.1.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 174 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 178 7.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 178 7.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 180 7.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 180 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY. 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS			
7.1.3.1. ARP INSPECTION. 174 7.1.3.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 175 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 175 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2. VIEB CONFIGURATIONS 178 7.1.3.2. VIEB CONFIGURATIONS 178 7.1.3.2. VIEB CONFIGURATIONS 179 7.1.3.2. VIEB CONFIGURATIONS 180 7.2. VEB CONFIGURATIONS 182 7.3. 802.1x 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. W			
7.1.3.1.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 174 7.1.3.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 175 7.1.3.2 ILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 178 7.1.3.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 178 7.1.3.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 179 7.1.3.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 180 7.2.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 180 7.2.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 182 7.3.8 802.1X 185 7.3.1 GLIBAL SETTINGS 188 7.3.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 182 7.3.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 188 7.3.1.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2 PORT SETUNCS 191 7.3.2.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4 PORT SECUNITY 194 7.4.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1.1 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2 WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197	/		
7.1.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 175 7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2. I. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 177 7.1.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 178 7.2. ACCESS CONTROL LIST. 179 7.1.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 180 7.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 182 7.3.802.1X. 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS. 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS. 188 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS. 189 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 189 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR. 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
7.1.3.2. FILTER TABLE 177 7.1.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 177 7.1.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 178 7.2. ACCESS CONTROL LIST 179 7.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 180 7.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 182 7.3.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 182 7.3.1.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 188 7.3.1.2. UPE CONFIGURATIONS 188 7.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 188 7.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 </td <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
7.1.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 177 7.1.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 178 7.2. ACCESS CONTROL LIST. 179 7.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 180 7.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 182 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198			
7.1.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 178 7.2. ACCESS CONTROL LIST. 179 7.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 180 7.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 182 7.3. 802.1x. 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS. 188 7.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 188 7.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 189 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 189 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 192 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 195 8. MONITOR. 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>			
7.2. ACCESS CONTROL LIST			
7.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 180 7.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 182 7.3. 802.1x 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINCS 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198			
7.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 182 7.3. 802.1x 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 188 7.3.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>			
7.3. 802.1X 185 7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS 188 7.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. VEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 192 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198	, .=		
7.3.1. GLOBAL SETTINGS. 188 7.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 189 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.3. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.4. RMON STATISTICS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 198			
7.3.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 188 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY. 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199			
7.3.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 189 7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS. 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199			
7.3.2. PORT SETTINGS 191 7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5. SFP INFORMA			
7.3.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 191 7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.3. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.4 CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.3. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200			
7.3.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 192 7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200			
7.4. PORT SECURITY 194 7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.3. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.4. RAMON STATISTICS 199 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS			
7.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 194 7.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 195 8. MONITOR 196 8.1. ALARM 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5. SFP INFORMATIONS 200 8.5. UEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 200 8.6.			
8. MONITOR. 196 8.1. ALARM. 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.4. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5. 2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204	7.4.1.		-
8. MONITOR. 196 8.1. ALARM. 196 8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.4. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5. 2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204	7.4.2.		-
8.1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 196 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 <t< th=""><th>8. N</th><th></th><th></th></t<>	8. N		
8.1.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 196 8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 197 8.3. PORT UTILIZATION 197 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 198 8.3.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 199 8.4.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 199 8.4.4. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.2. PORT STATISTICS 197 8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3. PORT UTILIZATION 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204	-		
8.2.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 197 8.3. PORT UTILIZATION 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204	•••=•		
8.2.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 197 8.3. PORT UTILIZATION 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.3. PORT UTILIZATION 198 8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.3.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204	-		
8.3.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 198 8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.4. RMON STATISTICS 199 8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.4.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.4.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 199 8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR. 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.5. SFP INFORMATION 200 8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204	-		
8.5.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 200 8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204	-		
8.5.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS			
8.6. TRAFFIC MONITOR 201 8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.6.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS 201 8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS 202 9. MANAGEMENT 204			
8.6.2. WEB CONFIGURATIONS			
9. MANAGEMENT			
	8.6.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	202
	9 N		
	.	IANAGEMENT	204

9.1.	SNMP	204
9.1.1.	SNMP	
9.1.1.1	1. SNMP SETTINGS	
9.1.1.1	1.1. CLI CONFIGURATIONS	

9.1.1.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	206
9.1.1.2.	COMMUNITY NAME	207
9.1.1.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	207
9.1.1.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	208
9.1.2.	SNMP TRAP	210
9.1.2.1.	RECEIVER SETTINGS	210
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
	EVENT SETTINGS	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
	PORT EVENT SETTINGS	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	-
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
	SNMPv3	
	SNMPv3 GROUP	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
	SNMPv3 User	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS.	
	SNMPv3 View	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
	JTO PROVISION	
0 0 1		
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
9.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222
9.2.2. 9.3. M.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 222
9.2.2. 9.3. M 9.3.1.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS	222 222 223
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 222 223 224
9.2.2. 9.3. M 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE	 222 222 223 224 226
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION	222 223 224 226 226
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 226
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 226 227
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.1.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228 228
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS REBOOT	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228 228 228 229 230
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3. 9.4.3.1.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228 228 228 229 230
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS REBOOT	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228 228 228 228 229 230 230
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3. 9.4.3.1.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS REBOOT CLI CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228 228 228 229 230 230 230
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS REBOOT CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 231
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.4.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 231 231
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.4. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS REBOOT CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CLI CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 231 231 231 232
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.4. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 231 231 232 233
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2. 9.5. Sy	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 231 231 231 232 233 233
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.4. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2. 9.5. Sy 9.5.1. 9.5.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS. AIL ALARM. CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS. AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS. FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. REBOOT CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SENCE CLI CONFIGURATIONS. CLI CONFIGURATIONS. CLI CONFIGURATIONS.	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 231 231 232 233 233 234
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.2.1. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.4. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2. 9.5. Sy 9.5.1. 9.5.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS. AIL ALARM. CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS. AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS. FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. REBOOT CLI CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONFIGURATIONS. WEB CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONFIGURATIONS. SERVER CONFIGURATIONS.	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 230 231 231 232 233 234 233 234 235
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.1.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.2.2. 9.4.3. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.4. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2. 9.5. SY 9.5.1. 9.5.2. 9.6. US	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS AINTENANCE CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 230 231 231 232 233 234 233 234 235
9.2.2. 9.3. M. 9.3.1. 9.3.2. 9.4. M. 9.4.1. 9.4.1.1. 9.4.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.2. 9.4.3. 9.4.3.1. 9.4.3.2. 9.4.3. 9.4.4.1. 9.4.4.2. 9.5. SY 9.5.1. 9.5.2. 9.6. US 9.6.1. 9.6.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS AIL ALARM CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CONFIGURATION CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS FIRMWARE CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS REBOOT CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL. CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS SERVER CONTROL. CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS SI LOG CLI CONFIGURATIONS WEB CONFIGURATIONS CLI CONFIGURATIONS SER ACCOUNT CLI CONFIGURATION	222 223 224 226 226 227 228 229 230 230 230 230 230 231 231 232 233 234 233 234 235 236

9.7.1.1.	CLI CONFIGURATION	
9.7.1.2.	WEB CONFIGURATION	
9.7.2.	MANUAL REGISTRATION	
9.7.2.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
9.7.2.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
9.7.3.	ONVIF	
9.7.3.1.	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
9.7.3.2.	WEB CONFIGURATIONS	
9.8. To	DPOLOGY MAP	244
9.8.1.	BACKGROUND CONFIGURATION	
9.8.2.	CLIENT-SWITCH MANAGEMENT	
10. MIS	5C	248
	ABLE TEST	
	CLI CONFIGURATIONS	
WARRA	ANTY & PRODUCT REGISTRATION	251

1. About this Manual

1.1. Introduction

The NGI-M04C2 managed industrial switch is engineered with rugged hardware to meet the high reliability requirements of Industrial applications. Built in a well-protected IP-30 aluminum housing, the switch withstands in operating temperatures ranging from -40°C to 75°C and operates consistently even in harsh industrial environments. NGI-M04C2 supports QoS, IGMP snooping, SFP DDMI and other device management features to fulfill the needs of high performance managed Industrial networks.

The switch is complied with 4-10/100/1000Base-T copper ports to deliver gigabit performance for most demanding industrial applications. Two gigabit fiber slots of the switch can be configured as dual fiber ring ports to quickly recover network failures and provide an easy way to establish redundant gigabit network. Thus, NGI-M04C2 ensures a reliable and highly available managed industrial network.

1.2. Purpose

This guide describes how to install and configure the NGI-M04C2 Industrial Managed Switch.

1.3. Terms/ Usage

In this guide, the term "Switch" (first letter upper case) refers to the NGI-M04C2 Switch, and "switch" (first letter lower case) refers to other switches.

2. About the NGI-M04C2

2.1. Features

Network Functions Port-based Mirroring 256 Active VLAN IGMP Snooping v1/v2/v3 IGMP Querier DHCP Relay/Option 82 Link Aggregation Link Layer Discovery Protocol Loop Detection, Auto Recovery Timer STP/RSTP SFP DDMI Support RMON Statistics

Network Security

Access Control List (L2/L3/L4) Port Security 802.1x Port Authentication DHCP Snooping

Traffic management & QoS

Port Priority Rate Limitation Storm Control Port Isolation 802.1Q Tag-based VLAN Auto MDI/MDI-X

Network Management

Command Line Interface, Telnet Web GUI SNMP v1/v2c Management VLAN System log Firmware Upgradable Configuration Upload/Download LED, SNMP trap, and email alarm

2.2. Specifications

10Base-T
100Base-TX/FX
1000Base-T
1000Base-SX/LX
Flow Control
Nway Auto-negotiation EEE, Energy Efficient Ethernet Link Layer Discovery Protocol MED
Class of Service, priority protocols
Spanning Tree Protocol
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
VLAN tagging
Network Access Control

Performance	
Switching fabric	12Gbps
L2 forwarding	8.92Mpps
Packet Buffer size	4.1Mbits
MAC Entries	08 K
Jumbo frame	10 K
Throughput	1,488,000pps when 1000Mbps speed
Physical ports	
10/100/1000Base-T (RJ45)	4
Gigabit SFP slots	2
D	
Power	
Input Voltage:	
- Primary inputs	20~57VDC at a maximum of 1.5A
- Redundant inputs	20~57VDC at a maximum of 1.5A
Connection:	
Removable 6-pin terminal block	one
Overload current protection	Support
Reverse Polarity Protection	Support
Relay output	One with current carrying capacity of 1 A @ 24VDC
System-power consumption	10W
Mechanical	
Dimension [W x H x D]	31 x 136 x 109.5 mm (1.22 x 5.36 x 4.31 in.)
Weight	395 g (0.87 lb.)
Mounting	DIN-Rail
Housing	IP30 protection
Operating Requirement	
Wide Operating Temperature	-40°C to 75°C (-40°F to 167°F)
Storage temperature	-40°C to 85°C (-40°F to 185°F)
Operating humidity Storage humidity	5% to 95% RH (Non-Condensing) 5% to 95% RH (Non-Condensing)
Storage numberry	site solution condensing)

DIN RAIL Recommendation Steel with Electrolytic Zinc Plating Stand-Off Brackets: 45⁰ Angle and Straight Comply with DIN 50045, 50022 and 50035 Standards

3. Hardware Description

NGI-M04C2 Front Panel



4 10/100/1000Base-T ports & 2 Gigabit SFP slots Managed Industrial Ethernet Switch

3.1. Connectors

The Switch utilizes ports with copper and SFP fiber port connectors functioning under Ethernet/Fast Ethernet/Gigabit Ethernet standards.

10/100/1000Base-T Ports

The 10/100/1000Base-T ports support network speeds of 10Mbps, 100Mbps or 1000Mbps, and can operate in half- and full-duplex transfer modes. These ports also offer automatic MDI/MDI-X crossover detection that gives true "plug-n-play" capability – just plug the network cables into the ports and the ports will adjust according to the end-node devices. The following are recommended cabling for the RJ45 connectors: (1) 10Mbps – Cat 3 or better; (2) 100/1000Mbps – Cat 5e or better.

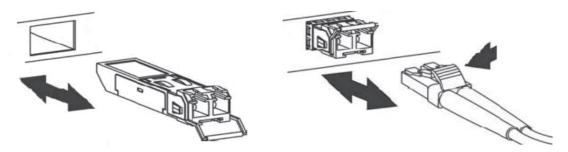
SFP Slots for SFP modules

The four SFP slots are designed to Gigabit SFP modules that support network speed of 1000Mbps.

Installing the SFP modules and Fiber Cable

- 1. Slide the selected SFP module into the selected SFP slot (Make sure the SFP module is aligned correctly with the inside of the slot).
- 2. Insert and slide the module into the SFP slot until it clicks into place.
- 3. Remove any rubber plugs that may be present in the SFP module's mouth.
- 4. Align the fiber cable's connector with the SFP module's mouth and insert the connector.
- 5. Slide the connector in until a click is heard.

6. If you want to pull the connector out, first push down the release clip on top of the connector to release the connector from the SFP module.



To properly connect fiber cabling: Check that the fiber terminators are clean. You can clean the cable plugs by wiping them gently with a clean tissue or cotton ball moistened with a little ethanol. Dirty fiber terminators on fiber optic cables will impair the quality of the light transmitted through the cable and lead to degraded performance on the port.

Note: When inserting the cable, be sure the tab on the plug clicks into position to ensure that it is properly seated.

Check the corresponding port LED on the Switch to be sure that the connection is valid. (Refer to the LED chart).

3.2. Installation

The location chosen for installing the Switch may greatly affect its performance. When selecting, we recommend considering the following rules:

- ✓ Install the Switch in an appropriate place. See Technical Specifications for the acceptable temperature and humidity ranges.
- ✓ Install the Switch in a location that is not affected by strong electromagnetic field generators (such as motors), vibration, dust, and direct sunlight.
- \checkmark Leave at least 10cm of space at the front and rear of the unit for ventilation.

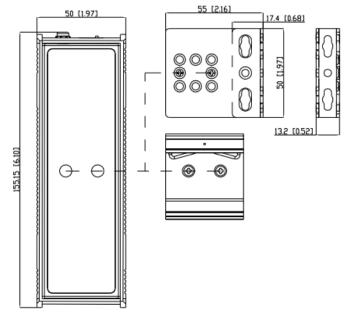
ATTENTION



The NGI-M04C2 Series is an open type device and NGI-M04C2 Series shall be DIN-Rail mounted or wall mounted (optional) in cabinet or enclosure

Hardware Installation

- ✓ Step 1: Unpack the device and other contents of the package.
- ✓ Step 2: Fasten DIN-Rail or Wall-mount kit on the rear of the NGI-M04C2



- ✓ Connect the 20~57V DC power supply to the PWR & RPS terminal block or 4-pin power adapter to DC jack receiver on the top of the Switch (Refer to "Wiring **Redundant Power Inputs"**)
 - ✓ Step 4: Connect the Ethernet (RJ45) port to the networking device and check the LED status to confirm the connection is established.

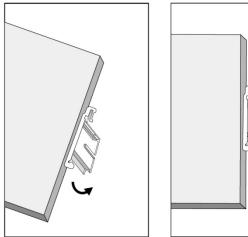
DIN rail Installation

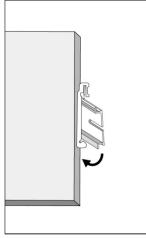
The NGI-M04C2 has a DIN rail bracket on the back of the Switch.

Location: The NGI-M04C2 can be DIN-Rail-mounted in cabinet or enclosure.

Mounting the switch

Place the NGI-M04C2 on the DIN rail from above using the slot. Push the front of the switch toward the mounting surface until it snaps into place with a click sound.





Dismounting the switch

Pull out the lower edge of the switch and then remove the switch from the DIN rail.

Ground the Switch: Before powering on the switch, ground the switch to earth. Ensure the rack on which the switch is to be mounted is properly grounded and incompliance with ETSI ETS 300 253. Verify that there is a good electrical connection to the grounding point on the rack (no paint or isolating surface treatment).

ATTENTION



This product is intended to be mounted to a well-grounded mounting surface such as a metal panel.

CAUTION



The earth connection must not be removed unless all power supply connection has been disconnected.

The device is installed in a restricted-access location it has a separate protective earthing terminal on the chassis that must be permanently connected to earth ground to adequately ground the chassis and protect the operator from electrical hazards.

ATTENTION



The product should be mounted in an Industrial Control Panel and the ambient temperature should not exceed 75°C.

ATTENTION

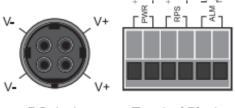


A corrosion-free mounting rail is advisable.

When installing, make sure to allow for enough space to properly install the cabling.

Wiring Power Inputs

You can use either "DC-Jack" or "Terminal Block (PWR)" for primary power and "Terminal Block (RPS)" for secondary power source, to be a Redundant Power Input. Top views of DC-Jack and Terminal Block are shown as pictures:



DC-Jack Terminal Block

follow the steps below:

✓ Step 1: Insert the positive/negative DC wires into the V+/V- terminal, respectively.

- ✓ Step 2: Use your finger to press the green plug on top of terminal block connector to insert power cables.
- ✓ **Step 3**: Insert the terminal block connector which includes "PWR" and "RPS" into the terminal block receptor which is located on the top panel.
- ✓ Option 2: Insert the "DC-Jack" connector into "DC-Jack" receiver and "Terminal Block (RPS)" into terminal block receptor.

WARNING

- Use copper conductors only, 60/75°C, tighten to 5lb
 - The wire gauge for the terminal block should range between 12~18 AWG.

Redundant Power Input: You can use "Terminal Block (PWR)" as primary power or "Terminal Block (PWR)" for redundant power.

Connect power cables to terminal block: Use your finger to press the orange plug on top of terminal block connector to insert power cables.

WARNING



Safety measures should be taken before connecting the power cable.Turn off the power before connecting modules or wires. The correct power supply voltage is listed on the product label. Check the voltage of your power source to make sure that you are using the correct voltage. DO NOT use a voltage greater than what is specified on the product label. Calculate the maximum possible current in each power wire and common wire. Observe all electrical codes dictating the maximum current allowable for each wire size. If current exceeds the maximum rating, the wiring can overheat causing serious damage to your equipment.

Please read and follow these guidelines:

• Use separate paths to route wiring for power and devices. If power wiring and device wiring paths must cross, make sure the wires are perpendicular at the intersection point.

NOTE: Do not run signal or communications wiring and power wiring through the same wire conduit. To avoid interference, wires with different signal characteristics should be routed separately.

- You can use the type of signal transmitted through a wire to determine which wires should be kept separate. The rule of thumb is that wiring that shares similar electrical characteristics can be bundled together.
- You should separate input wiring from output wiring.
- We advise that you label the wiring to all devices in the system.

Wiring the Alarm Contact:

The Alarm Contact consists of the two last contacts of the terminal block on switch's top panel.

ALM: The two last contacts of the 6-contact terminal block connector are used to detect both power faults and port faults. The two wires attached to the ALM contacts form an open circuit when:

1. The Switch has lost power from one of the DC power inputs. *OR*

2. One of the ports for which the corresponding PORT ALARM DIP Switch is set to ON is not properly connected.

If neither of these two conditions is satisfied, the Fault circuit will be closed.

WARNING



- Use copper conductors only, $60/75^{\circ}$ C (140/167°F), tighten to 0.56 N•m (5 lb•in).
- The wire gauge for the terminal block should range between 12~18 AWG.

Powering On the Unit

The Switch accepts the power input voltage from 20~57VDC.

- Insert the power cables into the terminal block located on the top of the device.
- ✓ Check the front-panel LEDs as the device is powered on to verify that the Power LED is lit. If not, check that the power cable is correctly and securely plugged in.

Notice: Turn off the power before connecting modules or wires.

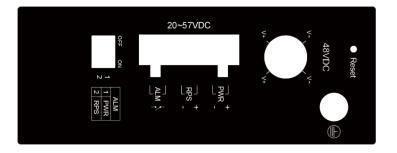
- The correct power supply voltage is listed on the product label. Check the voltage of your power source to make sure that you are using the correct voltage. Do NOT use a voltage greater than what is specified on the product label.
- Calculate the maximum possible current in each power wire and common wire. Observe all electrical codes dictating the maximum current allowable for each wire size. If current go above the maximum ratings, the wiring could overheat, causing serious damage to your equipment.

DI Interface Settting:

DI is an interface that adds the ability to input and output digital signals in parallel. Using a digital input makes it possible to monitor (read) the statuses of the external sensors (i.e door sensors, water sensors) from remote site.

Reset Button

There has "Reset" button in front of Switch which can help to manually hardware reboot.



3.3. LED Indicators

This Switch is equipped with Unit LEDs to enable you to determine the status of the Switch, as well as Port LEDs to display what is happening in all your connections. They are as follows:

DUUD	Illuminated	Power On by terminal block PWR 20~57VDC/DC-
PWR		Jack at 48VDC
(Green)	Off	Terminal block PWR/DC-Jack fails or is not
	OII	available
RPS	Illuminated	Power On by terminal block RPS at 20~57VDC
(Green)	Off	Terminal block RPS fails or is not available
ALM	Illuminated	Power lost alarm
(Red)	Off	No power lost or DIP function is disabled
10/100/1000Mbps	Illuminated	Copper port speeds at 1000Mbps
1~4 th (Green)	Off	Copper port speeds at 10/100Mbps
LNK/ACT	Illuminated	Ethernet link-up
	Blinking	Activity (receiving or transmitting data)
(Green)	Off	Port disconnected or link failed
SFP slots	Illuminated	Ethernet link-up
(1000Mbps)	Blinking	Activity (receiving or transmitting data)
5~6 th (Green)	Off	Port disconnected or link failed

Notice:

- ✓ *PWR*: Primary Power
- ✓ *RPS*: Redundant Power Supply
- ✓ ALM: Alarm

3.4. DIP Switches

Power: DIP 1 and DIP 2 is for primary power and redundant power supply.

No	Name	Description
1 PWR		ON: Primary power alarm reporting is enabled
I PWK	ΓWK	OFF: Primary power alarm reporting is disabled
2 RPS		ON: Redundant power alarm reporting is enabled
2 KPS	OFF: Redundant power alarm reporting is disabled	

4. System Status

4.1. Console Port

- Connect your computer to the console port on the Switch using the appropriate cable.
- Use terminal emulation software with the following settings:

Default Settings for the Console Fort			
Setting	Default Value		
Terminal Emulation	VT100		
Baud Rate	38400		
Parity	None		
Number of Data Bits	8		
Number of Stop Bits	1		
Flow Control	None		

Default Settings for the Console Port

• Press [ENTER] to open the login screen.

Setting	Default Value
Default Username	admin
Default Password	admin

4.2. Telnet

- Connect your computer to one of the Ethernet ports.
- Open a Telnet session to the Switch's IP address. If this is your first login, use the default values.

Setting	Default Value	
IP Address	192.168.0.254	
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	
Default Gateway	0.0.0.0	
Management VLAN	1	
Default Username	admin	
Default Password	admin	

Default Management IP Address

• Make sure your computer IP address is in the same subnet, unless you are accessing the Switch through one or more routers.

4.3. How to enter the CLI?

Press [Enter] key to enter the login command prompt when below message is displayed on the screen.

Please press Enter to activate this console

Input "*admin*" to enter the CLI mode when below message is displayed on the screen. *L2SWITCH login:*

You can execute a few limited commands when CLI prompt is displayed as below. *L2SWITCH>* If you want to execute more powerful commands, you must enter the privileged mode. Input command "*enable*" *L2SWITCH>enable*

Input a valid username and password when below prompt are displayed. *user: admin password: admin*

L2SWITCH#

Node	Command	Description
enable	show hostname	This command displays the system's network
		name.
configure	reboot	This command reboots the system.
eth0	ip address A.B.C.D/M	This command configures a static IP and subnet
		mask for the system.
interface	show	This command displays the current port
		configurations.
acl	show	This command displays the current access
		control profile.
vlan	show	This command displays the current VLAN
		configurations.

4.4. CLI command concept

The Node type:

• enable

Its command prompt is "*L2SWITCH*#". It means these commands can be executed in this command prompt.

• configure

Its command prompt is "*L2SWITCH(config)*#". It means these commands can be executed in this command prompt. In *Enable* code, executing command "*configure terminal*" enter the configure node.

L2SWITCH#configure terminal

• eth0

Its command prompt is "*L2SWITCH(config-if)*#". It means these commands can be executed in this command prompt. In *Configure* code, executing command "*interface eth0*" enter the eth0 interface node.

L2SWITCH(config)#interface eth0 L2SWITCH(config-if)# • interface

Its command prompt is "*L2SWITCH(config-if)*#". It means these commands can be executed in this command prompt. In *Configure* code, executing command "*interface gigaethernet1/0/5*" enter the interface port 5 node.

Or

In *Configure* code, executing command "*interface fastethernet1/0/5*" enter the interface port 5 node.

Note: Depending on your port speed, gigaethernet1/0/5 for gigabit Ethernet ports and fastethernet1/0/5 for fast Ethernet ports.

L2SWITCH(config)#interface gigaethernet1/0/5 L2SWITCH(config-if)#

• vlan

Its command prompt is "*L2SWITCH(config-vlan)*#". It means these commands can be executed in this command prompt. In *Configure* code, executing command "*vlan 2*" enter the vlan 2 node. *Note: Where the "2" is the vlan ID*.

L2SWITCH(config)#vlan 2 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)#

acl

Its command prompt is "*L2SWITCH(config-acl)*#". It means these commands can be executed in this command prompt. In *Configure* code, executing command "*access-list test*" enter the access-list test node.

Note: Where the "test" is the profile name.

L2SWITCH(config)#access-list test L2SWITCH(config-acl)#

4.5. Management via Internet Browser Interface

From a PC, open your Web browser, type the following in the Web address (or location) box: <u>http://192.168.0.254</u> and then press <Enter>.

This is the factory default IP address for the Switch. A login dialog is displayed, as shown in the figure:

	Switch
User Name:	admin
Password:	
	Login

Parameter	Description
User ID	Enter the user name.
Password	Enter the password.

Enter your user name/password, and then click Login.

Use the defaults the first time you log into the program. You can change the password at any time through CLI / GUI interface.

Default:

User name: admin Password: admin

4.6. System Information

Node	Command	Description
enable	show hostname	This command displays the system's network
		name.
enable	show interface eth0	This command will display the interface et0
		information.
enable	show model	This command will display information of
		switch like vendor, product, mac-address,
		serial boot code, firmware version etc
enable	show running-config	This command displays the current operating
		configurations.
enable	show system-info	This command will display information of
		CPU loading and memory usage, etc
enable	show uptime	This command will display the time from the
		system power up.

4.6.1. CLI Configuration

4.6.2. Web Configuration

The System Information window appears each time you log into the program. Alternatively, this window can be accessed by clicking System Status > System Information

stem Information	
Model Name	NGI-M04C2
Hostname	L2SWITCH
Boot Code Version	V1.2.6.S0
Firmware Version	V1.0.0.S0
Bullt Date	Wed May 19 16:05:03 CST 2021
DHCP Client	Enabled
IP Address	192.168.202.67
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	192.168.202.1
MAC Address	00:06:67:89:65:a2
Serial Number	3118VAOCN89650001
Management VLAN	1
CPU Loading	6.35 %
Memory Information	Total: 127664 KB, Free: 113016 KB, Usage: 11.47 %
Current Time	2021-5-19, 0:1:58
System Uptime	0 days, 0 hours, 2 minutes, 13 seconds
DHCPv6 Client	Disabled
IPv6 Local Address	fe80::206:67ff:fe89:65a2/64
IPv6 Default Gateway	
IPv6 Global Address	

Parameter	Description	
System Information		
Model Name	This field displays the model name of the Switch.	
Host name	This field displays the name of the Switch.	
Boot Code Version	This field displays the boot code version.	
Firmware Version	This field displays the version of the firmware.	
Built Date	This field displays the built date of the firmware.	
DHCP Client	This field displays whether the DHCP client is enabled on the Switch.	
IP Address	This field indicates the IP address of the Switch.	
Subnet Mask	This field indicates the subnet mask of the Switch.	

Default Gateway	This field indicates the default gateway of the Switch.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the Switch.
Serial Number	The serial number assigned by manufacture for identification of the unit.
Management VLAN	This field displays the VLAN ID that is used for the Switch management purposes.
CPU Loading	This field displays the percentage of your Switch's system load.
Memory Information	This field displays the total memory the Switch has and the memory which is currently available (Free) and occupied (Usage).
Current Time	This field displays current date (yyyy-mm-dd) and time (hh:mm:ss).
System Uptime	The time elapsed since the last boot of the operating system.
DHCPv6 Client	This field displays whether the DHCPv6 client is enabled on the Switch.
IPv6 Local Address	This field displays the Switch's local IP address for IPv6.
IPv6 Default Gateway	This field displays the default gateway for IPv6.
IPv6 Global Address	This field displays the Switch's global IP address for IPv6.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

5. Basic Settings

- 5.1. System Settings
 - 5.1.1. System

Management VLAN

To specify a VLAN group which can access the Switch.

- The valid VLAN range is from 1 to 4094.
- If you want to configure a management VLAN, the management VLAN should be created first and the management VLAN should have at least one member port.

Host Name

The **hostname** is same as the SNMP system name. Its length is up to 64 characters. The first 16 characters of the hostname will be configured as the CLI prompt.

Notices:

The default Hostname is L2SWITCH The default DHCP client is disabled. The default Static IP is 192.168.0.254 Subnet Mask is 255.255.255.0 Default Gateway is 0.0.0.0 Management VLAN is 1.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show interface eth0	This command displays the eth0
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	hostname STRINGS	This command sets the system's
		network name.
configure	interface eth0	This command enters the eth0 interface
		node to configure the system IP.
eth0	show	This command displays the eth0
		configurations.
eth0	ip address A.B.C.D/M	This command configures a static IP
		and subnet mask for the system.
eth0	ip address default-gateway	This command configures the system
	A.B.C.D	default gateway.
eth0	ip dhep elient	This command configures a DHCP
	(disable enable renew	client function for the system.
	next_restart)	disable: Use a static IP address on the
		switch.

5.1.1.1. CLI Configuration

eth0	management vlan <1-4094>	enable & renew: Use DHCP client to get an IP address from DHCP server. next_restart: The settings will take effect on next system restart. This command configures the
	generation	management vlan.
eth0	ip ipv6-address AAAA:BBBB:CCCC:DDDD:E EEE:FFFF:GGGGG:HHHH/M	This command configures a global scope of IPv6 address and subnet mask for the system.
eth0	ip ipv6-addressdefault-gateway AAAA:BBBB:CCCC:DDDD:E EEE:FFFF:GGGGG:HHHH	This command configures a default gateway for the system.
eth0	ip ipv6-dhcp client (disable enable renew next_restart)	This command configures a DHCPv6 client function for the system. disable : Use a static IP address on the switch. enable & renew : Use DHCPv6 client to get an IP address from DHCPv6 server. next_restart : The settings will take effect on next system restart.

Example: The procedures to configure an IP address for the Switch.

- ✓ To enter the configure node. L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#
- ✓ To enter the ETH0 interface node. L2SWITCH(config)#interface eth0 L2SWITCH(config-if)#
- ✓ To get an IP address from a DHCP server. L2SWITCH(config-if)#ip dhcp client enable
- ✓ To configure a static IP address and a gateway for the Switch. L2SWITCH(config-if)#ip address 192.168.202.111/24 L2SWITCH(config-if)#ip address default-gateway 192.168.202.1
- ✓ To configure a static global IPv6 address and a gateway for the Switch.
 Please set the static global IPv6 address first.
 L2SWITCH(config-if)#ip ipv6-address 3ffe::1235/64
 - And the set the IPv6 default gateway address.
 L2SWITCH(config-if)#ip ipv6-address default-gateway 3ffe::1234

5.1.1.2. Web Configuration

System Settings				
System	Jumbo Frame	SNTP	Management Host	
System Settings				
Hostname Management VLAN	L2SWITCH			
IPv4 Settings				
DHCP Client IP Address Subnet Mask	Enable Renew 192.168.202.65 255.255.25.0			
Default Gateway	192.168.202.1			
IPv6 Settings				
DHCPv6 Client Global Address Default Gateway	Disable V Renew			
		Apply Refresh		

Parameter	Description		
System Settings			
Hostname	The field configures a hostname for the system.		
Management VLAN	The field configures a VLAN group to manage the Switch.		
IPv4 Settings			
DHCP Client	Select Enable to allow the Switch to automatically get an IP address from a DHCP server. Click Renew to have the Switch re-get an IP address from the DHCP server. Select Disable if you want to configure the Switch's IP address manually.		
IP Address	Configures an IPv4 address for your Switch in dotted decimal notation. For example, 192.168.0.254.		
Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.		
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.1.		
IPv6 Settings			

DHCPv6 Client	Select Enable to allow the Switch to automatically get an IP address from a DHCPv6 server. Click Renew to have the Switch re-get an IP address from the DHCP server. Select Disable if you want to configure the Switch's IP address manually.
Global Address	Configure a global IPv6 address for the Switch.
Default Gateway	Set – Set an IPv6 default gateway for the Switch.Unset – Unset the IPv6 default gateway for the Switch.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

5.1.2. Jumbo Frame

Jumbo frames are Ethernet frames with a payload greater than 1500 bytes. Jumbo frames can enhance data transmission efficiency in a network. The bigger the frame size, the better the performance.

Notice:

- \checkmark The default jumbo frame is 10240 bytes.
- \checkmark The jumbo frame settings will apply to all ports.
- \checkmark If the size of a packet exceeds the jumbo frame size, the packet will be dropped.
- ✓ The available values are 10240, 1522, 1536, 1552, 9216.

5.1.2.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show jumboframe	This command displays the current
		jumbo frame settings.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the mode to
		config mode.
configure	jumboframe	This command configures the maximum
	(1522 1536 1552 9216 10240)	number of bytes of frame size for all
		ports.

5.1.2.2. Web Configuration

System Settings				
System	Jumbo Frame	SNTP	Management Host	
Jumbo Frame Setting				
Frame Size	10240 🗸	Apply Refresh		

Parameter	Description		
Jumbo Frame Settings			
Frame Size	This field configures the maximum number of bytes of frame size for the Switch.		
	(Available size: 1522/1536/1552/9216/10240)		
Apply Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			

5.1.3. SNTP

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) is a protocol for synchronizing the clocks of computer systems over packet-switched, variable-latency data networks. A less complex implementation of NTP, using the same protocol but without requiring the storage of state over extended periods of time is known as the **Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP)**.NTP provides Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). No information about time zones or daylight saving time is transmitted; this information is outside its scope and must be obtained separately.

UDP Port: 123.

Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.

Notes:

- 1. The SNTP server always replies the UTC current time.
- 2. When the Switch receives the SNTP reply time, the Switch will adjust the time with the time zone configuration and then configure the time to the Switch.
- 3. If the time server's IP address is not configured, the Switch will not send any SNTP request packets.
- 4. If no SNTP reply packets, the Switch will retry every 10 seconds forever.
- 5. If the Switch has received SNTP reply, the Switch will re-get the time from NTP server every 24 hours.
- 6. *If the time zone and time NTP server have been changed, the Switch will repeat the query process.*
- 7. No default SNTP server.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show time	This command displays current time
		and time configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	time	Sets the current time on the Switch.
	HOUR:MINUTE:SECOND	<i>hour</i> : 0-23
		<i>min</i> : 0-59
		<i>sec</i> : 0-59
		Note: If you configure Daylight
		Saving Time after you configure the
		time, the Switch will apply Daylight
		Saving Time.
configure	time date	Sets the current date on the Switch.
_	YEAR/MONTH/DAY	<i>year</i> : 1970-
		month: 1-12

5.1.3.1. CLI Configuration

		<i>day</i> : 1-31
configure	time daylight-saving-time	This command enables the daylight saving time.
configure	no time daylight-saving-time	This command disables daylight saving on the Switch.
configure	time daylight-saving-time start- date (first second third fourth last)(S unday Monday Tuesday Wedne sday Thursday Friday Saturday) MONTH HOUR	This command sets the start time of the Daylight Saving Time.
configure	time daylight-saving-time end- date (first second third fourth last)(S unday Monday Tuesday Wedne sday Thursday Friday Saturday) MONTH HOUR	This command sets the end time of the Daylight Saving Time.
configure	time ntp-server (disable enable)	This command disables / enables the NTP server state.
configure	time ntp-server IP_ADDRESS	This command sets the IP address of your time server.
configure	time ntp-server domain-name STRING	This command sets a domain name of your time server.
configure	time timezone STRING	Configures the time difference between UTC (formerly known as GMT) and your time zone. Valid Range: -1200 ~ +1200.

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#time ntp-server 192.5.41.41 L2SWITCH(config)#time timezone +0800 L2SWITCH(config)#time ntp-server enable L2SWITCH(config)#time daylight-saving-time start-date first Monday 6 0 L2SWITCH(config)#time daylight-saving-time end-date last Saturday 10 0

5.1.3.2. Web Configuration

System Settings			
System	Jumbo Frame SNTP Management Host		
Current Time and D	late		
Current Time	00:25:59 (UTC+0)		
Current Date	2020-01-01		
Time and Date Sett	ings		
Manual			
New Time	2020 . 1 . 1 / 0 : 25 : 59 (yyyy.mm.dd / hh:mm:ss)		
○ Enable Netw	ork Time Protocol		
NTP Server	O ntp0.fau.de - Europe		
	● IPv4 0.0.0.0		
Time Zone	+0000 (+hh / -hh / +hhmm / -hhmm)		
Daylight Saving Se	ttings		
State	Disable V		
Start Date	First V Sunday V of January V at 0 o'clock		
End Date	First V Sunday V of January V at 0 o'clock		
	Apply Refresh		

Parameter	Description		
Current Time and I	Date		
Current Time	This field displays the time you open / refresh this menu.		
Current Date	This field displays the date you open / refresh this menu.		
Time and Date Sett	ing		
Manual	Select this option if you want to enter the system date and time manually.		
New Time	Enter the new date in year, month and day format and time in hour, minute and second format. The new date and time then appear in the Current Date and Current Time fields after you click Apply .		
Enable Network Time Protocol	Select this option to use Network Time Protocol (NTP) for the time service.		
NTP Server	Select a pre-designated time server or type the IP address or type the IPv6 address or type the domain name of your time		

	server. The Switch searches for the timeserver for up to 60 seconds.		
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.		
Daylight Saving Set	tings		
State	Select Enable if you want to use Daylight Saving Time. Otherwise, select Disable to turn it off.		
Start Date	 Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you enabled Daylight Saving Time. The time is displayed in the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select Second, Sunday, March and 2:00. Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last, Sunday, March and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select 2:00 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1). 		
End Date	 (GM1+1). Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you enabled Daylight Saving Time. The time field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the last Sunday of October. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select First, Sunday, November and 2:00. Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last, Sunday, October and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select 2:00 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or 		
Apply	UTC (GMT+1). Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

5.1.4. Management Host

The feature limits the hosts which can manage the Switch. The default has no management host. That is, any hosts can manage the Switch via **telnet** or **web browser**. If user has configured one or more management host, the Switch can be managed by these hosts only. The feature allow user to configure management IP up to 10 entries.

Notices:

This feature allows user to configure management host up to 10 entries. The default is none, any host can manage the Switch via telnet or web browser.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show interface eth0	This command displays the eth0
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	interface eth0	This command enters the eth0 interface node
		to configure the system configurations.
eth0	management host	This command configures a static IP and
		subnet mask for the system.
eth0	show The command displays the all of the interface	
		eth0 configurations.
eth0	management host A.B.C.D	The command adds a management host
		address.
eth0	management subnet-host	The command adds a management host
	A.B.C.D/M	address with a subnet mask.
eth0	no management host	The command deletes a management host
	A.B.C.D	address.

5.1.4.1. CLI Configuration

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#interface eth0 L2SWITCH(config-if)#management subnet-host 192.168.202.1/24 Success! L2SWITCH(config-if)#management host 192.168.203.12 Success! L2SWITCH(config-if)#management host 192.168.203.13 Success! L2SWITCH(config-if)#show DHCP Server port(s): 1-6 Eth0 DHCP client: Enable DHCPv6 client: Disable Management vlan: 1

	Management Host: 192.168.202.1/24, 192.168.203.12/32,
192.168.20	03.13/32
	Default gateway: 192.168.202.1
	Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0B:04:90:60:21
	inet addr:192.168.202.74 Bcast:192.168.202.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
	inet6 addr: fe80::20b:4ff:fe90:6021/64 Scope:Link
	UP BROADCAST RUNNING ALLMULTI MULTICAST MTU:1500
Metric:1	ASYMMTU:0
	RX packets:17931 errors:0 dropped:6680 overruns:0 frame:0
	TX packets:6500 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
	collisions:0 txqueuelen:500
	RX bytes:3565872 (3.4 Mb) TX bytes:1173040 (1.1 Mb)

5.1.4.2. Web Configuration

System Settings				
System	Jumbo Frame	SNTP	Management Host	
Management Hos	t Settings			
Management Host: Subnet Mask: Apply Refresh				
Management Host List				
No. Management Host(IP/Mask) Action				
No.	Mana	gement Host(IP/Mask)		Action
1	192.168.202.1/24 Delete			

Parameter	Description	
Management Host	Settings	
Management Host	This field configures a management host in dotted decimal notation. For example, 192.168.0.254.	
Subnet Mask	This field configures the number of mask bit which allows to configure a range of hosts. If you do not specify value, the system will give 32 for the host automatically.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
Management Host List		
No.	This field displays a sequential number for each management host.	

Management Host (IP/Mask)	This field displays the management host and the number of mask bit.
Action	Click Delete to remove the specified entry.

5.2. MAC Management

Dynamic Address:

The MAC addresses are learnt by the switch. When the switch receives frames, it will record the source MAC, the received port and the VLAN in the address table with an age time. When the age time is expired, the address entry will be removed from the address table.

Static Address:

The MAC addresses are configured by users. The static addresses will not be aged out by the switch. The static address can be removed by user only. The maximum static address entry is up to 256.

The switch supports up to 16K address table. The static address and the dynamic address share the same table.

The **MAC Table** (a MAC table is also known as a filtering database) shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the Switch's ports. When a device (which may belong to a VLAN group) sends a packet which is forwarded to a port on the Switch, the MAC address of the device is shown on the Switch's MAC Table. It also shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered).

The Switch uses the **MAC Table** to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

- 1. The Switch examines a received frame and learns the port from which this source MAC address came.
- 2. The Switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learnt in the **MAC Table**.
 - ✓ If the Switch has already learnt the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
 - ✓ If the Switch has not already learnt the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.
 - ✓ If the Switch has already learnt the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

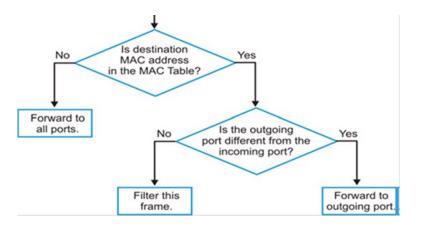


Figure: MAC Table Flowchart

Notices:

- \checkmark The default MAC address table age time is 300 seconds.
- \checkmark The Maximum static address entry is 256.

5.2.1. Static MAC

A static Media Access Control (MAC) address is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address table, and do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port, so this may reduce the need for broadcasting.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show mac-address-table	This command displays the current
	(static dynamic)	static/dynamic unicast address entries.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	mac-address-table static	This command configures a static unicast
	MACADDR vlan <1-	entry.
	4094> port PORT_ID	
configure	no mac-address-table	This command removes a static unicast entry
	static MACADDR vlan	from the address table.
	<1-4094>	

5.2.1.1. CLI Configuration

5.2.1.2. Web Configuration

MAC Management				
Static MAC MAC Table Age Time				
Static MAC Settings	Static MAC Settings			
MAC Address VLAN ID Port				
	Apply Refre	sh		
Static MAC Table				
MAC Address	VLAN ID	Port	Action	
00:0b:04:11:22:33	1	1	Delete	
00:0b:04:84:16:24	1	CPU		
			Total Counts:2	

Parameter	Description		
Static MAC Setting	Static MAC Settings		
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of a computer or device that you want to add to the MAC address table. Valid format is hh:hh:hh:hh:hh.		
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID to apply to the computer or device.		
Port	Enter the port number to which the computer or device is connected.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		
Static MAC Table			
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of a manually entered MAC address entry.		
VLAN ID	This field displays the VID of a manually entered MAC address entry.		
Port	This field displays the port number of a manually entered MAC address entry. The MAC address with port CPU means the Switch's MAC addresses itself.		
Action	Click Delete to remove this manually entered MAC address entry from the MAC address table.		

5.2.2. MAC Table

5.2.2.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show mac-address-table	This command displays the current
	(static dynamic)	static/dynamic unicast address entries.
enable	show mac-address-table	This command displays information of a
	mac MACADDR	specific MAC.
enable	show mac-address-table	This command displays the current unicast
	port PORT_ID	address entries learnt by the specific port.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	clear mac address-table	This command clears the dynamic address
	dynamic	entries.

5.2.2.2. Web Configuration

		MAC Management			
Static MAC	MAC Table	Age Time			
MAC Table	IAC Table				
Show Type	All 🗸	Apply Refresh		Clear	
MAC	Address	Туре	VLAN ID	Port/Trunk ID	
00:0b:	04:00:00:05	Static	1	CPU	
18:31:	bf:92:d4:a2	Dynamic	1	1	
a0:8c:	fd:ec:12:f8	Dynamic	1	1	
00:0b:	04:00:01:5e	Dynamic	1	1	
00:0b:	04:90:60:21	Dynamic	1	1	
bc:ee:	7b:db:a2:9e	Dynamic	1	1	
f4:6d:	04:e6:f9:59	Dynamic	1	1	
				Total Counts:7	
	Page UP Page Down	n Page:1/1	F	Page: 1 Apply	

Parameter	Description
Mac Table	
Show Type Apply	Select All, Static , Dynamic or Port and then click Apply to display the corresponding MAC address entries on this screen.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
MAC Address	This field displays a MAC address.
Туре	This field displays whether this entry was entered manually (Static) or whether it was learned by the Switch (Dynamic).

VLAN ID	This field displays the VLAN ID of the MAC address entry.
Port / Trunk ID	This field displays the port number / Trunk ID the MAC address entry is associated. It displays CPU if it is the entry for the Switch itself. The CPU means that it is the Switch's MAC.
Total Counts	This field displays the total entries in the MAC table.

5.2.3. Age Time

5.2.3.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show mac-address-table	This command displays the current MAC
	aging-time	address table age time.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	mac-address-table aging-	This command configures the mac table aging
	time VALUE	time. The range is 20 to 500 or 0: disable.

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#mac-address-table aging-time 200 Success!

L2SWITCH#show mac-address-table aging-time The mac-address-table aging-time is 200 sec.

5.2.3.2. Web Configuration

MAC Management				
Static MAC		MAC Table	Age Time	
Age Time Settings				
Age Time:	Age Time: 300 (sec) (Range: 20-500 or 0:disable)			
Apply Refresh				

Parameter	Description
Age Time Settings	
Age Time	Configure the age time; the valid range is from 20 to 500 seconds. The default value is 300 seconds. 0 means that the system will not age out any entries.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

5.3. Port Mirror

Port-Based Mirroring

The Port-Based Mirroring is used on a network switch to send a copy of network packets sent/received on one or a range of switch ports to a network monitoring connection on another switch port (**Monitor to Port**). This is commonly used for network appliances that require monitoring of network traffic, such as an intrusion-detection system.

Port Mirroring, together with a network traffic analyzer, helps to monitor network traffic. Users can monitor the selected ports (**Source Ports**) for egress and/or ingress packets.

Source Mode:

Ingress : The received packets will be copied to the monitor port.

Egress : The transmitted packets will be copied to the monitor port.

Both : The received and transmitted packets will be copied to the monitor port.

Notices:

- 1. The monitor port cannot be a trunk member port.
- 2. The monitor port cannot be ingress or egress port.
- 3. If the Port Mirror function is enabled, the Monitor-to Port can receive mirrored packets only.
- 4. If a port has been configured as a source port and then user configures the port as a destination port, the port will be removed from the source ports automatically.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show mirror	This command displays the current port mirroring
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	mirror	This command disables / enables the port
	(disable enable)	mirroring on the switch.
configure	mirror destination	This command specifies the monitor port for the
	port PORT_ID	port mirroring.
configure	mirror source ports	This command adds a port or a range of ports as
	PORT_LIST mode	the source ports of the port mirroring.
	(both ingress egress)	
configure	no mirror source ports	This command removes a port or a range of ports
	PORT_LIST	from the source ports of the port mirroring.

5.3.1. CLI Configuration

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal

L2SWITCH(config)#mirror destination port 9

Success!

L2SWITCH(config)#mirror source ports 1-8 mode ingress

Success! L2SWITCH(config)#exit L2SWITCH#show mirror Mirror Configurations: State : Disabled Monitor port : 9 Ingress port(s) : 1-8 Egress port(s) : None

5.3.2. Web Configuration

Port Mirror					
Port Mirroring Set	Doct Missoing Cottings				
Monitor to Port	State Disable • Monitor to Port 1 •				
	All Ports :				
Source Port	Mirror Mode	Source Port	Mirror Mode		
1	Disable 🗸	2	Disable 🗸		
3	Disable 🗸	4	Disable 🗸		
5	Disable 🛩	6	Disable 🗸		
Apply Refresh					

Parameter	Description	
Port Mirroring Settings		
State	Select Enable to turn on port mirroring or select Disable to turn it off.	
Monitor to Port	Select the port which connects to a network traffic analyzer.	
All Ports	Settings in this field apply to all ports. Use this field only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this field first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.	
Source Port	This field displays the number of a port.	
Mirror Mode	Select Ingress , Egress or Both to only copy the ingress (incoming), egress (outgoing) or both (incoming and outgoing) traffic from the specified source ports to the monitor port. Select Disable to not copy any traffic from the specified source ports to the monitor port.	

Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

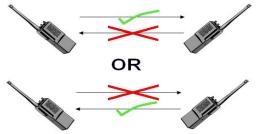
5.4. Port Settings

• Duplex mode

A *duplex* communication system is a system composed of two connected parties or devices that can communicate with one another in both directions.

Half Duplex:

A *half-duplex* system provides for communication in both directions, but only one direction at a time (not simultaneously). Typically, once a party begins receiving a signal, it must wait for the transmitter to stop transmitting, before replying.



Full Duplex:

A *full-duplex*, or sometimes *double-duplex* system, allows communication in both directions, and, unlike half-duplex, allows this to happen simultaneously. Land-line telephone networks are full-duplex, since they allow both callers to speak and be heard at the same time.



• Loopback Test

A loopback test is a test in which a signal in sent from a communications device and returned (looped back) to it as a way to determine whether the device is working right or as a way to pin down a failing node in a network. One type of loopback test is performed using a special plug, called a **wrap plug** that is inserted in a port on a communications device. The effect of a wrap plug is to cause transmitted (output) data to be returned as received (input) data, simulating a complete communications circuit using a single computer.

• Auto MDI-MDIX

Auto-MDIX (automatic medium-dependent interface crossover) is a computer networking technology that automatically detects the required cable connection type (straight-through or crossover) and configures the connection appropriately, thereby removing the need for crossover cables to interconnect switches or connecting PCs peer-to-peer. When it is enabled, either type of cable can be used or the interface automatically corrects any incorrect cabling. For Auto-MDIX to operate correctly, the speed on the interface and duplex setting must be set to "auto". Auto-MDIX was developed by HP engineers Dan Dove and Bruce Melvin.

• Auto Negotiation

Auto (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a port on the Switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode.

If the peer port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using **half-duplex** mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer port are the same in order to connect.

• Flow Control

A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses.IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill and resend later.

The Switch uses IEEE802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and backpressure flow control in half duplex mode. IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill. Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later.

Note: 1000 Base-T does not support force mode.

5.4.1. General Settings

5.4.1.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show interface IFNAME	This command displays the current port
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
interface	show	This command displays the current port
		configurations.
interface	loopback (none mac)	This command tests the loopback mode
		of operation for the specific port.
interface	flowcontrol (off on)	This command disables / enables the
		flow control for the port.

interface	speed (auto 10-full 10-full-n 10-half 10-half-n 100-full 100-full-n 100-half 100-half- n 1000-full 1000-full-n)	This command configures the speed and duplex for the ports. auto: Auto negotiation mode. 10-full: 10Mbps Full duplex force mode. 10-full-n: 10Mbps Full duplex auto negotiation mode. 10-half: 10Mbps Half duplex force mode. 10-half-n: 10Mbps Half duplex auto negotiation mode. 100-full: 100Mbps Full duplex force mode. 100-full-n: 100Mbps Full duplex auto negotiation mode. 100-half: 100Mbps Half duplex force mode. 100-half: 100Mbps Half duplex force mode. 100-half-n: 100Mbps Half duplex auto negotiation mode. 1000-full:1000Mbps Full duplex force mode.
interface	shutdown	This command disables the specific port.
interface	no shutdown	This command enables the specific port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.
if-range	shutdown	This command disables the specific ports.
if-range	no shutdown	This command enables the specific ports.
if-range	speed (auto 10-full 10-full-n 10-half 10-half-n 100-full 100-full–n 100-half 100-half- n 1000-full 1000-full-n)	This command configures the speed and duplex for the ports. auto: Auto negotiation mode. 10-full: 10Mbps Full duplex force mode. 10-full-n: 10Mbps Full duplex auto negotiation mode. 10-half: 10Mbps Half duplex force mode. 10-half-n: 10Mbps Half duplex auto negotiation mode. 100-full: 100Mbps Full duplex force mode. 100-full-n: 100Mbps Full duplex auto negotiation mode. 100-half: 100Mbps Half duplex force mode.

100-half-n: 100Mbps Half duplex auto
negotiation mode.
1000-full:1000Mbps Full duplex force
mode.
1000-full-n: 1000Mbps Full duplex auto
negotiation mode.

5.4.1.2. Web Configuration

Port Settings					
General Settings Information					
Port Setting	s				
Port State Speed/Duplex Flow Control From: 1 v To: 1 v On v					
		Apply	Refresh		
Dart Statua					
Port Status					
Port Status	_	_	_		_
Port Status Port	State	Speed/Duplex	Flow Control		Link Status
_	State Enabled	Speed/Duplex Auto	Flow Control On	1	Link Status 000M / Full / On
Port				1	
Port 1	Enabled	Auto	On	1	000M / Full / On
Port 1 2	Enabled Enabled	Auto Auto	On On	1	000M / Full / On Link Down
Port 1 2 3	Enabled Enabled Enabled	Auto Auto Auto	On On On	1	000M / Full / On Link Down Link Down

Parameter	Description
Port Settings	
Port	Select a port or a range ports you want to configure on this screen.
State	Select Enable to activate the port or Disable to deactivate the port.
Speed/Duplex	Select the speed and duplex mode of the port. The choices are: • Auto • 10 Mbps / Full Duplex • 10 Mbps / Full Duplex / Nway • 10 Mbps / Half Duplex • 10 Mbps / Half Duplex / Nway • 100 Mbps / Full Duplex / Nway • 100 Mbps / Half Duplex / Nway • 100 Mbps / Half Duplex / Nway • 100 Mbps / Full Duplex / Nway • 1000 Mbps / Full Duplex / Nway
Flow Control	Select On to enable access to buffering resources for the port thus ensuring lossless operation across network switches. Otherwise, select Off to disable it.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Port Status	
Port	This field displays the port number.
State	This field displays whether the port is enabled or disabled.
Speed/Duplex	This field displays the speed either 10M , 100M or 1000M and the duplex mode Full or Half .
Flow Control	This field displays whether the port's flow control is On or Off .
Link Status	This field displays the link status of the port. If the port is up, it displays the port's speed, duplex and flow control setting. Otherwise, it displays Link Down if the port is disabled or not connected to any device.

5.4.2. Information

5.4.2.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show interface IFNAME	This command displays the current
		port configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
interface	show	This command displays the current
		port configurations.
interface	description STRING	This command configures a
		description for the specific port.
		The length of description is up to
		240 characters.
interface	no description	This command configures the
		default port description.
interface	alias STRING	This command configures an alias
		for the specific port. The length of
		alias is up to 64 characters.
interface	no alias	This command reset the alias to
		default.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.
if-range	description STRINGs	This command configures a
		description for the specific ports.
if-range	no description	This command configures the
		default port description for the
		specific ports.

if-range	alias STRING	This command configures an alias for the specific ports. The length of alias is up to 64 characters.
if-range	no alias	This command reset the alias to default.

5.4.2.2. Web Configuration

Port Settings						
Gener	al Settings	nformation				
Port Settings						
	Port	Descrip	otion	1	Alias	
Fre	om: 🛛 🗸 To: 🗋 🖌	gigabitethernet1/0/1		gigabitethernet1/0	/1	
		App	ply Refresh			
Port St		Apr	Status	Uptime	Medium Mode	
	atus Description gigabitethernet1/0/1			Uptime 0 days 0:17:29	Medium Mode Copper	
Port	Description	Alias	Status	•		
Port 1	Description gigabitethernet1/0/1	Alias gigabitethernet1/0/1	Status Normally	0 days 0:17:29	Copper	
Port 1 2	Description gigabitethernet1/0/1 gigabitethernet1/0/2	Alias gigabitethernet1/0/1 gigabitethernet1/0/2	Status Normally Normally	0 days 0:17:29 0 days 0:0:0	Copper Copper	
Port 1 2 3	Description gigabitethernet1/0/1 gigabitethernet1/0/2 gigabitethernet1/0/3	Alias gigabitethernet1/0/1 gigabitethernet1/0/2 gigabitethernet1/0/3	Status Normally Normally Normally	0 days 0:17:29 0 days 0:0:0 0 days 0:0:0	Copper Copper Copper	

Parameter	Description
Port Settings	
Port	Select a port or a range ports you want to configure on this screen.
Description	Configures a meaningful name for the port(s).
Alias	Configures an alias for the port(s).
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Port Status	
Port	This field displays the port number.
Description	The meaningful name for the port.
Alias	The alias name for the port.

Status	The field displays the detail port status if the port is blocked by some protocol.
Uptime	The sustained time from last link up.
Medium Mode	The current working medium mode (copper or fiber) for the port.

6. Advanced Settings

6.1. Bandwidth Control

6.1.1. QoS

Each egress port can support up to 8 transmit queues. Each egress transmit queue contains a list specifying the packet transmission order. Every incoming frame is forwarded to one of the 8 egress transmit queues of the assigned egress port, based on its priority. The egress port transmits packets from each of the 8 transmit queues according to a configurable scheduling algorithm, which can be a combination of Strict Priority (SP) and/or Weighted Round Robin (WRR).

Typically, networks operate on a best-effort delivery basis, which means that all traffic has equal priority and an equal chance of being delivered in a timely manner. When congestion occurs, all traffic has an equal chance of being dropped.

When you configure the QoS feature, you can select specific network traffic, prioritize it according to its relative importance, and use congestion-management and congestion-avoidance techniques to give preferential treatment. Implementing QoS in your network makes network performance more predictable and bandwidth utilization more effective.

The Switch supports 802.1p priority queuing. The Switch has 8 priority queues. These priority queues are numbered from 7 (Class 7) — the highest priority queue — to 0 (Class 0) — the lowest priority queue.

The eight priority tags specified in IEEE 802.1p (p0 to p7) are mapped to the Switch's priority queues as follows:

Priority: 01234567Queue: 20134567

Priority scheduling is implemented by the priority queues stated above. The Switch will empty the four hardware priority queues in order, beginning with the highest priority queue, 7, to the lowest priority queue, 0. Each hardware queue will transmit all of the packets in its buffer before permitting the next lower priority to transmit its packets. When the lowest hardware priority queue has finished transmitting all of its packets, the highest hardware priority queue will begin transmitting any packets it may have received.

QoS Enhancement

You can configure the Switch to prioritize traffic even if the incoming packets are not marked with IEEE 802.1p priority tags or change the existing priority tags based on the criteria you select. The Switch allows you to choose one of the following methods for assigning priority to incoming packets on the Switch:

• **802.1p Tag Priority** - Assign priority to packets based on the packet's 802.1p tagged priority.

- **Port Based QoS** Assign priority to packets based on the incoming port on the Switch.
- **DSCP Based QoS** Assign priority to packets based on their Differentiated Services Code Points (DSCPs).

Note: Advanced QoS methods only affect the internal priority queue mapping for the Switch. The Switch does not modify the IEEE 802.1p value for the egress frames. You can choose one of these ways to alter the way incoming packets are prioritized or you can choose not to use any QoS enhancement setting on the Switch.

802.1p Priority

When using 802.1p priority mechanism, the packet is examined for the presence of a valid 802.1p priority tag. If the tag is present, the packet is assigned to a programmable egress queue based on the value of the tagged priority. The tagged priority can be designated to any of the available queues.

Ethernet Packet:

6	6	2	42-1496	4
DA	SA	Type / Length	Data	FCS

6	6	4	2	42-1496	4
DA	SA	802.1Q Tag	Type / Length	Data	FCS

802.1Q Tag:

2 bytes	2 bytes		
Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID)	Tag Control Information (TCI)		
16 bits	3 bits	1 bit	12 bits
TPID (0x8100)	Priority	CFI	VID

- Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID): a 16-bit field set to a value of **0x8100** in order to identify the frame as an IEEE 802.1Q-tagged frame.
- Tag Control Information (TCI)
 - Priority Code Point (PCP): a 3-bit field which refers to the IEEE 802.1p priority. It indicates the frame priority level from 0 (lowest) to 7 (highest), which can be used to prioritize different classes of traffic (voice, video, data, etc.).
 - Canonical Format Indicator (CFI): a 1-bit field. If the value of this field is 1, the MAC address is in non-canonical format. If the value is 0, the MAC address is in canonical format. It is always set to zero for Ethernet switches. CFI is used for compatibility between Ethernet and Token Ring networks. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be bridged to an untagged port.
 - VLAN Identifier (VID): a 12-bit field specifying the VLAN to which the frame belongs. A value of 0 means that the frame doesn't belong to any VLAN; in this case the 802.1Q tag specifies only a priority and is referred to as a **priority tag**. A value of hex 0xFFF is reserved for implementation use. All other values may

be used as VLAN identifiers, allowing up to 4094 VLANs. On bridges, VLAN 1 is often reserved for management.

Priority Levels PCP: Priority Code Point.

РСР	Network Priority	Traffic Characteristics
1	0 (lowest)	Background
0	1	Best Effort
2	2	Excellent Effort
3	3	Critical Applications
4	4	Video, <100ms latency
5	5	Video, < 10ms latency
6	6	Internetwork Control
7	7 (highest)	Network Control

6.1.1.1. Port Priority

6.1.1.1.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show interface	This command displays the current port
	IFNAME	configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure
		node.
interface	default-priority <0-7>	This command allows the user to specify a
		default priority handling of untagged packets
		received by the Switch. The priority value
		entered with this command will be used to
		determine which of the hardware priority queues
		the packet is forwarded to. Default: 0.
interface	no default-priority	This command configures the default priority (0)
		for the specific port.

6.1.1.1.2. Web Configuration

QoS						
Port Priority	IP DiffServ (DSCP) Priority/	Queue Mapping	g Schedule Mode			
Port Priority Se	ettings					
	All Ports 802.1	Ip priority : 🔤 🗸				
Port	802.1p priority	Port	802.1p priority			
1	0 🗸	2	0 🗸			
3	0 🗸	4	0 🗸			
5	0 🗸	6	0 🗸			
	Apply	Refresh				

Parameter	Description
Port Priority Settin	gs
All Ports 802.1p priority	Use this field to set a priority for all ports. The value indicates packet priority and is added to the priority tag field of incoming packets. The values range from 0 (lowest priority) to 7 (highest priority).
Port	This field displays the number of a port.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority for packets received by the port. Only packets without 802.1p priority tagged will be applied the priority you set here.

Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.1.1.2. IP DiffServ (DSCP)

DiffServ (DSCP)

Differentiated Services or DiffServ is a computer networking architecture that specifies a simple, scalable and coarse-grained mechanism for classifying, managing network traffic and providing Quality of Service (QoS) guarantees on modern IP networks. DiffServ can, for example, be used to provide low-latency, guaranteed service (GS) to critical network traffic such as voice or video while providing simple best-effort traffic guarantees to noncritical services such as web traffic or file transfers.

Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) is a 6-bit field in the header of IP packets for packet classification purposes. DSCP replaces the outdated IP precedence, a 3-bit field in the Type of Service byte of the IP header originally used to classify and prioritize types of traffic.

When using the DiffServ priority mechanism, the packet is classified based on the DSCP field in the IP header. If the tag is present, the packet is assigned to a programmable egress queue based on the value of the tagged priority. The tagged priority can be designated to any of the available queues.

Version	IHL	Type of Service	Total Length		
Identification			Flags	Fragment Offset	
Time to Live Protocol Header Checksum				Header Checksum	
Source Address					
Destination Address					
Options Padding					
Evenuela lutare et Data anome Haadan					

Example Internet Datagram Header

IP Header Type of Service: 8 bits

The Type of Service provides an indication of the abstract parameters of the quality of service desired. These parameters are to be used to guide the selection of the actual service parameters when transmitting a datagram through a particular network. Several networks offer service precedence, which somehow treats high precedence traffic as more important than other traffic (generally by accepting only traffic above certain precedence at time of high load). The major choice is a three way tradeoff between low-delay, high-reliability, and high-throughput.

Bits 0-2:	Precedence.
Bit 3:	0 = Normal Delay,
Bits 4:	0 = Normal Throughput,
Bits 5:	0 = Normal Reliability,
Bit 6-7:	Reserved for Future Use.

1 = Low Delay.

1 = High Throughput.

1 = High Reliability.

Bit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
PRECEDENCE		D	Т	R	0	0	

Precedence

- 111 Network Control
- 110 Internetwork Control
- 101 CRITIC/ECP
- 100 Flash Override
- 011 Flash
- 010 Immediate
- 001 Priority
- 000 Routine

The use of the Delay, Throughput, and Reliability indications may increase the cost (in some sense) of the service. In many networks better performance for one of these parameters is coupled with worse performance on another. Except for very unusual cases at most two of these three indications should be set.

The type of service is used to specify the treatment of the datagram during its transmission through the internet system. Example mappings of the internet type of service to the actual service provided on networks such as AUTODIN II, ARPANET, SATNET, and PRNET is given in "Service Mappings".

The Network Control precedence designation is intended to be used within a network only. The actual use and control of that designation is up to each network. The Internetwork Control designation is intended for use by gateway control originators only.

If the actual use of these precedence designations is of concern to a particular network, it is the responsibility of that network to control the access to, and use of, those precedence designations.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show diffserv	This command displays DiffServ configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	diffserv	This command disables / enables the DiffServ
	(disable enable)	function.
configure	diffserv dscp <0-63>	This command sets the DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1q
	priority <0-7>	mappings.

6.1.1.2.1. CLI Configuration

	QoS							
Port Pric	Port Priority IP DiffServ (DSCP) Priority/Queue Mapping Schedule Mode							
DSCP Settin	DSCP Settings							
Mode								
DSCP	Priority	DSCP	Priority	DSCP	Priority	DSCP	Priority	
DSCP 0	0 🗸	DSCP 1	0 🗸	DSCP 2	0 🗸	DSCP 3	0 🗸	
DSCP 4	0 🗸	DSCP 5	0 🗸	DSCP 6	0 🗸	DSCP 7	0 🗸	
DSCP 8	0 🗸	DSCP 9	0 🗸	DSCP 10	0 🗸	DSCP 11	0 🗸	
DSCP 12	0 🗸	DSCP 13	0 🗸	DSCP 14	0 🗸	DSCP 15	0 🗸	
DSCP 16	0 🗸	DSCP 17	0 🗸	DSCP 18	0 🗸	DSCP 19	0 🗸	
DSCP 20	0 🗸	DSCP 21	0 🗸	DSCP 22	0 🗸	DSCP 23	0 🗸	
DSCP 24	0 🗸	DSCP 25	0 🗸	DSCP 26	0 🗸	DSCP 27	0 🗸	
DSCP 28	0 🗸	DSCP 29	0 🗸	DSCP 30	0 🗸	DSCP 31	0 🗸	
DSCP 32	0 🗸	DSCP 33	0 🗸	DSCP 34	0 🗸	DSCP 35	0 🗸	
DSCP 36	0 🗸	D\$CP 37	0 🗸	DSCP 38	0 🗸	DSCP 39	0 🗸	
DSCP 40	0 🗸	DSCP 41	0 🗸	DSCP 42	0 🗸	DSCP 43	0 🗸	
DSCP 44	0 🗸	DSCP 45	0 🗸	DSCP 46	0 🗸	DSCP 47	0 🗸	
DSCP 48	0 🗸	DSCP 49	0 🗸	DSCP 50	0 🗸	DSCP 51	0 🗸	
DSCP 52	0 🗸	DSCP 53	0 🗸	DSCP 54	0 🗸	DSCP 55	0 🗸	
DSCP 56	0 🗸	DSCP 57	0 🗸	DSCP 58	0 🗸	DSCP 59	0 🗸	
DSCP 60	0 🗸	DSCP 61	0 🗸	DSCP 62	0 🗸	DSCP 63	0 🗸	
			Apply	Refresh				

6.1.1.2.2. Web Configuration

Parameter Description

DSCP Settings					
Mode	"Tag Over DSCP" or "DSCP Over Tag". "Tag Over DSCP" means the 802.1p tag has higher priority than DSCP.				
Priority	This field displays each priority level. The values range from 0 (lowest priority) to 7 (highest priority).				
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.				
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.				

6.1.1.3. Priority/Queue Mapping

6.1.1.3.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show queue cos-map	This command displays the current 802.1p
		priority mapping to the service queue.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	queue cos-map <0-7>	This command configures the 802.1p priority
	<0-7>	mapping to the service queue.
configure	no queue cos-map	This command configures the 802.1p priority
		mapping to the service queue to default.

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 0 1 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 1 2 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 2 3 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 3 4 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 4 5 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 5 6 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 6 7 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#queue cos-map 7 0 Success! L2SWITCH(config)#exit L2SWITCH#show queue cos-map The mapping of the Priority to Queue are: PRIO $0 \implies COSQ 1$

PRIO 1 ==> COSQ 1 PRIO 1 ==> COSQ 2 PRIO 2 ==> COSQ 3 PRIO 3 ==> COSQ 4 PRIO 4 ==> COSQ 5 PRIO 5 ==> COSQ 6 PRIO 6 ==> COSQ 7 PRIO 7 ==> COSQ 0

6.1.1.3.2. Web Configuration

				QoS	
	Port Priority	IP DiffServ (I	OSCP)	Priority/Queue Mapping	Schedule Mode
Prio	ority/Queue Mappi	ng Settings			
				Reset to Default	
	Priori	ity		Que	eue ID
	0			1	▼
	1			(
	2			2	2 🗸
	3			3	3 •
	4			4	L •
	5			Ę	∽
	6			6	5 v
	7			ī	7 🗸
				Apply Refresh	

Parameter	Description			
Priority/Queue Mapping Settings				
Reset to Default	Click this button to reset the priority to queue mappings to the defaults.			
Priority	This field displays each priority level. The values range from 0 (lowest priority) to 7 (highest priority).			
Queue ID	Select the number of a queue for packets with the priority level.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			

6.1.1.4. Schedule Mode

Queuing Algorithms

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

• Strict-Priority (SPQ)

The packets on the high priority queue are always service firstly.

• Weighted round robin (WRR)

Round Robin scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin (WRR) scheduling uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

• Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ)

WFQ is a data packet scheduling technique allowing different scheduling priorities to statistically multiplexed data flows. It provides traffic priority management that automatically sorts among individual traffic streams without requiring an access list. WFQ decides which queue is selected in one slot time to guarantee the minimal packet rate of one queue. Thus, WFQ allows Internet operators to define traffic classes and then assign different bandwidth proportions.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show qos mode	This command displays the current QoS
		scheduling mode of IEEE 802.1p.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	qos mode high-first	This command configures the QoS scheduling mode to high-first, each hardware queue will transmit all of the packets in its buffer before permitting the next lower priority to transmit its packets.

6.1.1.4.1. CLI Configuration

configure	qos mode wrr-queue weights <1-127> <1- 127> <1-127> <1-127> <1-127> <1-127> <1- 127> <1-127> <1-	This command configures the QoS scheduling mode to Weighted Round Robin.
configure	qos mode wfq-queue weights <1-127> <1- 127> <1-127> <1-127> <1-127> <1-127> <1- 127> <1-127> <1-	This command configures the QoS scheduling mode to Weighted Fair Queuing .

6.1.1.4.2. Web Configuration

			QoS	
	Port Priority	IP DiffServ (DSCP)	Priority/Queue Mapping	Schedule Mode
Sc	hedule Mode Settin	gs		
	Schedule Mode:	High First(SPQ)	~	
	Queue ID		Weight Value(Ran	ge:1~127)
	0			
	1			
	2			
	3			
	4			
	5			
	6			
	7			
			Apply Refresh	

Parameter	Description
Schedule Mode Set	tings
Schedule Mode	 Select High First(SPQ) or Weighted Round Robin (WRR). Note: Queue weights can only be changed when Weighted Round Robin is selected. High First(SPQ=Strict Priority Queue): Packets with higher priority levels are always transmitted before packets with lower priority levels. Weighted Round Robin scheduling services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue Weight field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ):

Queue ID	This field indicates which Queue (0 to 7) you are configuring. Queue 0 has the lowest priority and Queue 7 the highest priority.
Weight Value	You can only configure the queue weights when Weighted Round Robin is selected. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.1.2. Rate Limitation

6.1.2.1. Storm Control

A broadcast storm means that your network is overwhelmed with constant broadcast or multicast traffic. Broadcast storms can eventually lead to a complete loss of network connectivity as the packets proliferate.

Storm Control protects the Switch bandwidth from flooding packets, including broadcast packets, multicast packets, and destination lookup failure (DLF). The **Rate** is a threshold that limits the total number of the selected type of packets. For example, if the broadcast and multicast options are selected, the total amount of packets per second for those two types will not exceed the limit value.

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and unknown unicast (also referred to as Destination Lookup Failure or DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and unknown unicast packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and unknown unicast packets in your network.

Storm Control unit: pps.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show storm-control	This command displays the current storm
		control configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	storm-control rate <1-	This command enables the bandwidth limit
	5000> type (broadcast	for broadcast or multicast or DLF packets
	multicast DLF) ports	and set the limitation.
	PORTLISTS	

6.1.2.1.1. CLI Configuration

configure	no storm-control type	This command disables the bandwidth limit
	(broadcast multicast	for broadcast or multicast or DLF packets.
	DLF) ports PORTLISTS	

6.1.2.1.2. Web Configuration

(Range:1~5000, 0:Disable) Apply Refresh Storm Control Status Port Multicast Broadcast DLF Port Multicast Broadc	Rate Limitation							
Port Rate Type From: 1 To: 1 To	Storm Control Bandwidth Limitation							
From: 1 v To: 1 v 0 (pps) Broadca (Range:1~5000, 0:Disable) Apply Refresh Storm Control Status		_	_	_	_	_	rol Settings	Storm Cont
From: 1 v To: 1 v 0 (pps) Broadca (Range:1~5000, 0:Disable) Apply Refresh Storm Control Status		-						_
(Range:1~5000, 0:Disable) Apply Refresh Storm Control Status	e	Туре			Rate		Port	
Apply Refresh Storm Control Status	Broadcast 🗸			pps)	(0	1 🕶 To: 1 🕶	From:
Storm Control Status Port Multicast Broadcast DLF Port Multicast Broadcast	(Range:1~5000, 0:Disable)							
Port Multicast Broadcast DLF Port Multicast Broadc	Apply Refresh							
Port	Storm Control Status							
Rate(pps) Rate(pps) Rate(pps) Rate(pps)		Broadcast Rate(pps)	Multicast Rate(pps)	Port	DLF Rate(pps)	Broadcast Rate(pps)	Multicast Rate(pps)	Port
1 0 300 300 2 0 300	300	300	0	2	300	300	0	1
3 0 300 300 4 0 300	300	300	0	4	300	300	0	3
5 0 300 300 6 0 300	300	300	0	6	300	300	0	5

Parameter Description

Storm Control Settings

Port	Select the port number for which you want to configure storm control settings.
Rate	Select the number of packets (of the type specified in the Type field) per second the Switch can receive per second.
Туре	Select Broadcast - to specify a limit for the amount of broadcast packets received per second. Multicast - to specify a limit for the amount of multicast packets received per second. DLF - to specify a limit for the amount of DLF packets received per second.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.1.2.2. Bandwidth Limitation

The rate limitation is used to control the rate of traffic sent or received on a network interface.

Rate Limitation unit: 16 Kbits.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show bandwidth-limit	This command displays the current rate control
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	bandwidth-limit	This command enables the bandwidth limit for
	egress <0-62500>	outgoing packets and set the limitation.
	ports PORTLISTS	
configure	no bandwidth-limit	This command disables the bandwidth limit for
	egress ports	outgoing packets.
	PORTLISTS	
configure	bandwidth-limit	This command enables the bandwidth limit for
	ingress <0-62500>	incoming packets and set the limitation.
	ports PORTLISTS	
configure	no bandwidth-limit	This command disables the bandwidth limit for
	ingress ports	incoming packets.
	PORTLISTS	

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#bandwidth-limit ingress 1 ports 1-3 Success!

6.1.2.2.2. Web Configuration

Rate Limitation						
Storm Control Bandwidth Limitation						
Bandwidth Limitation Settings						
Port Ingress Egress						
From:	1 🕶 To: 1 🕶	0 * 16	(Kbits)	0	* 16(Kbits)	
(Range:1~62500, 0:Disable)						
Apply Refresh						
andwidth L	imitation Status					
Port	Ingress (Kb)	Egress (Kb)	Port	Ingress (Kb)	Egress (Kb)	
1	0	0	2	0	0	
3	0	0	4	0	0	
5	0	0	6	0	0	

Parameter	Description		
Bandwidth Limitation Settings			
Port	Selects a port that you want to configure.		
Ingress	Configures the rate limitation for the ingress packets.		
Egress	Configures the rate limitation for the egress packets.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

6.2. IGMP Snooping

6.2.1. IGMP Snooping

The IGMP snooping is for multicast traffic. The Switch can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Switch can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.

The Switch can perform IGMP snooping on up to 4094 VLANs. You can configure the Switch to automatically learn multicast group membership of any VLANs. The Switch then performs IGMP snooping on the first VLANs that send IGMP packets. Alternatively, you can specify the VLANs that IGMP snooping should be performed on. This is referred to as fixed mode. In fixed mode the Switch does not learn multicast group membership of any VLANs other than those explicitly added as an IGMP snooping VLAN.

Configurations:

Users can enable/disable the IGMP Snooping on the Switch. Users also can enable/disable the IGMP Snooping on a specific VLAN. If the IGMP Snooping on the Switch is disabled, the IGMP Snooping is disabled on all VLANs even some of the VLAN IGMP Snooping are enabled.

Default Settings

If received packets are not received after 400 seconds, all multicast entries will be deleted.

The default global IGMP snooping state is disabled.

The default VLAN IGMP snooping state is disabled for all VLANs.

The unknown multicast packets will be dropped.

The default port Immediate Leave state is disabled for all ports.

The default port Querier Mode state is auto for all ports.

The IGMP snooping Report Suppression is disabled.

Notices: There are a global state and per VLAN states. When the global state is disabled, the IGMP snooping on the Switch is disabled even per VLAN states are enabled. When the global state is enabled, user must enable per VLAN states to enable the IGMP Snooping on the specific VLAN.

6.2.1.1. General Settings

6.2.1.1.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show igmp-snooping	This command displays the current IGMP
		snooping configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	igmp-snooping	This command disables / enables the IGMP
	(disable enable)	snooping on the switch.
configure	igmp-snooping vlan	This command enables the IGMP snooping
	VLANLISTS	function on a VLAN or range of VLANs.
configure	no igmp-snooping vlan	This command disables the IGMP snooping
	VLANLISTS	function on a VLAN or range of VLANs.
configure	igmp-snooping	This command configures the process for
	unknown-multicast	unknown multicast packets when the IGMP
	(drop flooding)	snooping function is enabled.
		drop: Drop all of the unknown multicast
		packets.
		flooding: Flooding the unknown multicast
		packets to all ports.

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#igmp-snooping enable L2SWITCH(config)#igmp-snooping vlan 1

6.2.1.1.2. Web Configuration

	IGMP Snooping			
Gener	al Settings Po	ort Settings	Querier Settings	
IGMP S	nooping Settings			
IGM	IGMP Snooping State Disable ✓ IGMP Snooping VLAN State Add ✓ Unknown Multicast Packets Flooding ✓ Apply Refresh			
IGMP S	IGMP Snooping Status			
IGMP Snooping State Enabled on VLAN Unknown Multicast Packets		AN	Disabled None Flooding	

Parameter	Description		
IGMP Snooping Settin	ngs		
IGMP Snooping State	Select Enable to activate IGMP Snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group. Select Disable to deactivate the feature.		
IGMP Snooping VLAN State	Select Add and enter VLANs upon which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping. The valid range of VLAN IDs is between 1 and 4094. Use a comma (,) or hyphen (-) to specify more than one VLANs. Select Delete and enter VLANs on which to have the Switch not perform IGMP snooping.		
Unknown Multicast Packets	Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select Drop to discard the frame(s). Select Flooding to send the frame(s) to all ports.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		
IGMP Snooping Status			
IGMP Snooping State	This field displays whether IGMP snooping is globally enabled or disabled.		
Enable on VLAN	This field displays VLANs on which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping. None displays if you have not enabled IGMP snooping on any VLAN yet.		
Unknown Multicast Packets	This field displays whether the Switch is set to drop or flooding unknown multicast packets.		

6.2.1.2. Port Settings

Immediate Leave

When you enable IGMP Immediate-Leave processing, the switch immediately removes a port when it detects an IGMP version 2 leave message on that port. You should use the Immediate-Leave feature only when there is a single receiver present on every port in the VLAN. (Immediate Leave is only supported on IGMP Version 2 hosts).

The switch uses IGMP snooping Immediate Leave to remove from the forwarding table an interface that sends a leave message without the switch sending group-specific queries to the interface. The VLAN interface is pruned from the multicast tree for the multicast group specified in the original leave message. Immediate Leave ensures optimal bandwidth management for all hosts on a switched network, even when multiple multicast groups are simultaneously in use.

Without Immediate Leave, when the switch receives an IGMP leave message from a subscriber on a receiver port, it sends out an IGMP specific query on that port and waits

for IGMP group membership reports. If no reports are received in a configured time period, the receiver port is removed from multicast group membership.

Port IGMP Querier Mode

• Auto:

The Switch uses the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets.

• Fixed:

The Switch always treats the port(s) as IGMP query port(s). This is for when connecting an IGMP multicast server to the port(s). The Switch always forwards the client's **report/leave** packets to the port.

Normally, the port is connected to an IGMP server.

• Edge:

The Switch does not use the port as an IGMP query port. The IGMP query packets received by this port will be dropped.

Normally, the port is connected to an IGMP client.

Note: The Switch will forward the IGMP join and leave packets to the query port.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show igmp-snooping	This command displays the current IGMP
		snooping configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure
		node.
interface	igmp-immediate-leave	This command enables the IGMP Snooping
		immediate leave function for the specific port.
interface	no igmp-immediate-	This command disables the IGMP Snooping
	leave	immediate leave function for the specific port.
interface	igmp-group-limit	This command configures the maximum
	VALUE	groups for the specific port.
interface	no igmp-group-limit	This command configures the default value for
		the limitation of the maximum groups for the
		specific port.
interface	igmp-querier-mode	This command specifies whether or not and
	(auto fixed edge)	under what conditions the port(s) is (are) IGMP
		query port(s). The Switch forwards IGMP join
		or leave packets to an IGMP query port,
		treating the port as being connected to an
		IGMP multicast router (or server). You must
		enable IGMP snooping as well. (Default: auto)

6.2.1.2.1. CLI Configuration

configure	interface range gigabitethernet1/0/POR TLISTS	This command enters the if-range configure node.
if-range	igmp-immediate-leave	This command enables the IGMP Snooping immediate leave function for the specific ports.
if-range	no igmp-immediate- leave	This command disables the IGMP Snooping immediate leave function for the specific ports.
if-range	igmp-group-limit VALUE	This command configures the maximum groups for the specific port.
if-range	no igmp-group-limit	This command configures the default value for the limitation of the maximum groups for the specific port.
if-range	igmp-querier-mode (auto fixed edge)	This command specifies whether or not and under what conditions the ports is (are) IGMP query port(s). The Switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port, treating the port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). You must enable IGMP snooping as well. (Default: auto)

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#*interface 1/0/1* L2SWITCH(config-if)#*igmp-immediate-leave* L2SWITCH(config-if)#*igmp-querier-mode fixed* L2SWITCH(config-if)#*igmp-snooping group-limit 20*

6.2.1.2.2. Web Configuration

	IGMP Snooping				
General Settings Querier Settings					
Port Settings					
Port Querier Mode Immediate Leave Group Limit					
From	: 1 🕶 To: 1 👻	Auto 🗸	Disable	e 🗸	266
Port Statu Port	s Querier	Mode	Immediate Leave		Group/Limit
1	Aut	D	Disable		0/266
2	Aut	D	Disable		0/266
3	3 Auto		Disable		0/266
4	Auto		Disable		0/266
5	5 Auto		Disable		0/266
6	Auto		Disable		0/266

Parameter	Description
Port Settings	
Querier Mode	Select the desired setting, Auto , Fixed , or Edge . Auto means the Switch uses the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets. Fixed means the Switch always treats the port(s) as IGMP query port(s). This is for when connecting an IGMP multicast server to the port(s). Edge means the Switch does not use the port as an IGMP query port. In this case, the Switch does not keep a record of an IGMP router being connected to this port and the Switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.
Immediate Leave	Select individual ports on which to enable immediate leave.
Group Limit	Configures the maximum group for the port or a range of ports.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Port Status	
Port	The port ID.
Querier Mode	The Querier mode setting for the specific port.
Immediate Leave	The Immediate Leave setting for the specific port.
Group / Limit	The current joining group count and the maximum group count.

6.2.1.3. Querier Settings

IGMP Querier

There is normally only one Querier per physical network. All multicast routers start up as a Querier on each attached network. If a multicast router hears a Query message from a router **with a lower IP address**, it MUST become a Non-Querier on that network. If a router has not heard a Query message from another router for [Other Querier Present Interval], it resumes the role of Querier. Routers periodically [Query Interval]send a General Query on each attached network for which this router is the Querier, to solicit membership information. On startup, a router SHOULD send [Startup Query Count] General Queries spaced closely together [Startup Query Interval] in order to quickly and reliably determine membership information. A General Query is addressed to the all-systems multicast group (224.0.0.1), has a Group Address field of 0, and has a Max Response Time of [Query Response Interval].

Node	Command	Description
enable	show igmp-snooping	This command displays the current IGMP
	querier	Queriers and the querier configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	igmp-snooping querier	This command disables / enables the IGMP
	(disable enable)	snooping querier on the switch.
configure	igmp-snooping querier	This command enables the IGMP snooping
	vlan VLANLISTS	querier function on a VLAN or range of
		VLANs.
configure	no igmp-snooping	This command disables the IGMP snooping
	querier vlan	querier function on a VLAN or range of
	VLANLISTS	VLANs.
configure	igmp-snooping query	This command configures the query interval for
	interval <2-300>	the Querier. Unit: second.

6.2.1.3.1. CLI Configuration

6.2.1.3.2. Web Configuration

	IGMP Snooping							
Ge	eneral Settings	Port Set	tings	Querie	r Settings			
Que	erier Settings							
(State Query Interval VLAN State	Disable 125 Add	(sec)	Apply	Refresh]		
Que	Querier Status							
	State Query Interval		Disable 125 (sec)					
	Enabled on VLAN		None					

Parameter	Description	
Querier Settings		
State	This field configures the global Querier state.	
Query Interval	This field configures the interval which Querier send query packet periodically.	
VLAN State	This field enables the Querier state in a vlan or a range of vlan.	
Apply Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
Querier Status		
State	This filed indicates the current global Querier status.	
Query Interval	This field indicates the interval which Querier send query packet periodically.	
Enable on VLAN	This field displays VLANs on which the Switch is to perform IGMP querier. None displays if you have not enabled IGMP querier on any VLAN yet.	

6.2.2. IGMP Snooping Filtering

The IGMP Snooping Filter allows users to configure one or some of range or multicast address to drop or to forward them.

6.2.2.1. General Settings

6.2.2.1.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show igmp-snooping filtering	This command displays the IGMP
		snooping filtering configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	igmp-snooping filtering	This command enables/disables the
	(enable disable)	IGMP snooping filtering profiles on the
		Switch.
configure	igmp-snooping filtering	This command creates a filtering
	profile STRING	profile and enters the IGMP snooping
		filtering profiles configuration node.
configure	no igmp-snooping filtering all	This command removes all of the
		IGMP snooping filtering profiles from
		the Switch.
configure	no igmp-snooping filtering	This command removes the IGMP
	STRINGS	snooping filtering profiles by name
		from the Switch.
config-igmp	type (deny permit)	This command configures the type of
		deny or permit for the group.

6.2.2.1.2. Web Configuration

IGMP Filtering					
General Settings Multicast Groups	s Port Settings				
IGMP Filtering Settings	IGMP Filtering Settings				
IGMP Filtering State: Disable 🗸					
Profile		Тур	e		
		Deny	~		
	Apply Refresh]			
IGMP Filtering Status	IGMP Filtering Status				
Profile	Tuno	Dorto	Action		
	Туре	Ports	Action		
Justin	Deny		Delete		

Parameter	Description				
IGMP Filtering Set	IGMP Filtering Settings				
IGMP Filtering State	This field configures the global IGMP Filtering state.				
Profile	This field creates the IGMP Filtering profile.				
Туре	The field configures the type of action for the profile.				
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.				
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.				
IGMP Filtering Sta	tus				
Profile	The profile name.				
Туре	The type of action.				
Ports	The field indicates the ports that the IGMP Filtering profile is activated.				
Action	Click Delete to delete the profile.				

6.2.2.2. Multicast Group

6.2.2.2.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show igmp-snooping filtering	This command displays the IGMP
		snooping filtering configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	igmp-snooping filtering profile	This command creates a filtering
	STRING	profile and enters the IGMP snooping
		filtering profiles configuration node.
config-igmp	Group GROUP_ID start-	This command configures the group
	address START-ADDR end-	configurations, including group index
	address END-ADDR	and start multicast address and end
		multicast address.
config-igmp	no group GROUP-ID	This command removes the group
		configurations.
config-igmp	no group all	This command removes all of the
		group configurations.

6.2.2.2.2. Web Configuration

IGMP Filtering						
General Settings	General Settings Multicast Groups Port Settings					
Group Settings	Group Settings					
Profile:	Profile: Test1 V					
Gro	oup	Sta	rt Address	End Addr	ess	
1	~					
	Apply Refresh					
Group Status						
Profile	Туре	Group	Start Address	End Address	Action	
Test1	deny	1	225.1.1.1	225.1.1.254	Delete	
Test1	deny	2	226.1.1.1	226.1.1.254	Delete	
Test2	deny	1	227.1.1.1	227.1.1.254	Delete	
Test2	deny	2	228.1.1.1	228.1.1.254	Delete	

Parameter	Description
Group Settings	
Profile	This field selects the profile which you want to configure the group.
Group	This field selects the group index.
Start Address	The field configures the first multicast address of the group.
End Address	The field configures the last multicast address of the group.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afres	

6.2.2.3. Port Settings

6.2.2.3.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show igmp-snooping filtering	This command displays the IGMP
		snooping filtering configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
interface	igmp-snooping filtering profile	This command enables the IGMP
	STRING	snooping filtering profiles on the
		specific port.
interface	no igmp-snooping filtering	This command disables the IGMP
	profile STRINGS	snooping filtering profiles on the
		specific port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.
if-config	igmp-snooping filtering profile	This command enables the IGMP
	STRING	snooping filtering profiles on the range
		of ports.
if-config	no igmp-snooping filtering	This command disables the IGMP
	profile STRINGS	snooping filtering profiles on the range
		of ports.

6.2.2.3.2. Web Configuration

IGMP Filtering				
General Settings M	Aulticast Groups	Port Settings		
Port Settings				
Profile :				
Activate on Ports	Activate on Ports			
○ Select All ○	Deselect All			
	□ <mark>6</mark>			
	5			
		Apply Refresh		
Port Status				
Profile		Туре	Port	

Parameter	Description
Port Settings	
Profile	This field selects the profile which you want to activate on the ports.
Activate on Ports	Selects the ports which you want to activate the IGMP Filtering profile.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

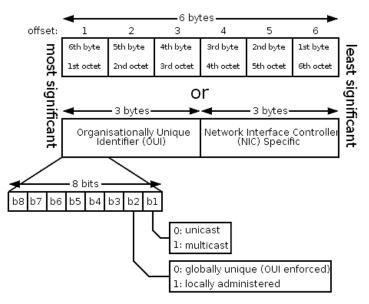
6.2.3. Multicast Address

A multicast address is associated with a group of interested receivers. According to RFC 3171, addresses 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255, the former Class D addresses, are designated as multicast addresses in IPv4.

The IANA owns the OUI MAC address 01:00:5e, therefore multicast packets are delivered by using the Ethernet MAC address range 01:00:5e:00:00:00 - 01:00:5e:7f:ff:ff. This is 23 bits of available address space.

The first octet (01) includes the broadcast/multicast bit. The lower 23 bits of the 28-bit multicast IP address are mapped into the 23 bits of available Ethernet address space. This means that there is ambiguity in delivering packets. If two hosts on the same subnet each subscribe to a different multicast group whose address differs only in the first 5 bits, Ethernet packets for both multicast groups will be delivered to both hosts, requiring the network software in the hosts to discard the un-required packets.

Class	Address Range	Supports
Class A	1.0.0.1 to 126.255.255.254	Supports 16 million hosts on each of 127 networks.
Class B	128.1.0.1 to 191.255.255.254	Supports 65,000 hosts on each of 16,000 networks.
Class C	192.0.1.1 to 223.255.254.254	Supports 254 hosts on each of 2 million networks.
Class D	224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255	Reserved for multicast groups.
Class E	240.0.0.0 to 254.255.255.254	Reserved for future use, or Research and Development Purposes.



IP multicast address	Description		
224.0.0.0	Base address (reserved).		
224.0.0.1	The All Hosts multicast group that contains all systems on the same network segment.		
224.0.0.2	The All Routers multicast group that contains all routers on the same network segment.		
224.0.0.5	The Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) All SPF Routers address. Used to send Hello packets to all OSPF routers on a network segment.		
224.0.0.6	The OSPF All D Routers address. Used to send OSPF routing information to OSPF designated routers on a network segment.		
224.0.0.9	The <u>RIP</u> version 2 group address, used to send routing information using the RIP protocol to all RIP v2-aware routers on a network segment.		
224.0.0.10	EIGRP group address. Used to send EIGRP routing information to all EIGRP routers on a network segment.		
224.0.0.13	PIM Version 2 (Protocol Independent Multicast).		
224.0.0.18	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol.		
224.0.0.19-21	IS-IS over IP.		
224.0.0.22	IGMP Version 3 (Internet Group Management Protocol).		
224.0.0.102	Hot Standby Router Protocol Version 2.		
224.0.0.251	Multicast DNS address.		
224.0.0.252	Link-local Multicast Name Resolution address.		
224.0.1.1	Network Time Protocol address.		
224.0.1.39	Cisco Auto-RP-Announce address.		
224.0.1.40	Cisco Auto-RP-Discovery address.		
224.0.1.41	H.323 Gatekeeper discovery address.		

6.2.3.1. CLI Configuration

Node	Command	Description
enable	show ip-multicast	This command displays the IP multicast
		information.
enable	show mac-address-table	This command displays the current
		unicast and multicast address entries.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.

configure	ip-multicast IPADDR server IPADDR vlan <1-4094> port PORTLISTS	This command configures an IP multicast group.
configure	no ip-multicast IPADDR server IPADDR vlan <1-4094>	This command deletes an IP multicast group.

6.2.3.2. Web Configuration

	Multicast Address						
5	Static Multicast Address Settings						
	VLAN I	D G	iroup IP	Source	e IP	F	Port
	1 🗸						
		, I <u> </u>	/	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		L	
			App	oly Refresh			
	/lulticast Ad	dress Table					
	VLAN ID	Group IP	Source IP	Status	Po	rt	Action
	1	225.1.1.1	192.168.202.70	Static	1-4	4	Delete
							Total Counts:1

Parameter	Description			
Static Multicast Address Settings				
VLAN ID	Configures the VLAN that you want to configure.			
Group IP	Configures the multicast group IP address.			
Source IP	Configures the host's IP address which send out the multicast stream.			
Port	Configures the member port(s) for the multicast address.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			

6.3. VLAN

6.3.1. Port Isolation

The port isolation is a port-based virtual LAN feature. It partitions the switching ports into virtual private domains designated on a per port basis. Data switching outside of the port's private domain is not allowed. It will ignore the packets' tag VLAN information.

This feature is a per port setting to configure the egress port(s) for the specific port to forward its received packets. If the CPU port (port 0) is not an egress port for a specific port, the host connected to the specific port cannot manage the Switch.

If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports.**CPU** refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.

Example: If you want to allow port-1 and port-3 to talk to each other, you must configure as below:

L2SWITCH(config)#interface 1/0/1 L2SWITCH(config-if)#port-isolation ports 3 L2SWITCH(config-if)#exit ; Allow the port-1 to send its ingress packets to port-3.

L2SWITCH(config)#interface 1/0/3 L2SWITCH(config-if)#port-isolation ports 1 L2SWITCH(config-if)#exit ; Allow the port-3 to send its ingress packets to port-1

Node	Command	Description		
enable	show port-isolation	This command displays the current port isolation		
		configurations.		
		"V" indicates the port's packets can be sent to that		
		port.		
		"-" indicates the port's packets cannot be sent to		
		that port.		
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure node.		
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure node.		
interface	port-isolation ports	This command configures a port or a range of ports		
	PORTLISTS	to egress traffic from the specific port.		
interface	no port-isolation	This command configures all ports to egress traffic		
		from the specific port.		

6.3.1.1. CLI Configurations

6.3.1.2. Web Configurations

			Port Isola	uon					
rt Isolation Settings									
Port	From:	1 🕶 To: 1 🛩							
Egress Port:									
O Select All	O Desel	ect All							
	✓ 6								
✓1 ✓2 ✓3 ✓4	≤ 5	🗹 0 (CPU)							
Apply Refresh									
						Egress Port			
				Egress Port					
Port	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		
1	v	v	V	3 V	v	v	v		
1 2	v	v v	v v	3 V V	v v	v v	v		
1 2 3	v v v	V V V V	V V V	3 V V V	v v v	V V V	v v v		
1 2 3 4	V V V V	V V V V	v v v v	3 V V V V	v v v v	V V V V	V V V V		
1 2 3	v v v	V V V V	V V V	3 V V V	v v v	V V V	v v v		

Parameter	Description				
Port Isolation Settin	Port Isolation Settings				
Port	Select a port number to configure its port isolation settings. Select All Ports to configure the port isolation settings for all ports on the Switch.				
Egress Port	An egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. Selecting a port as an outgoing port means it will communicate with the port currently being configured.				
Select All/ Deselect All	Click Select All to mark all ports as egress ports and permit traffic. Click Deselect All to unmark all ports and isolate them. Deselecting all ports means the port being configured cannot communicate with any other port.				
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.				
Refresh Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.					
Port Isolation Status					
	"V" indicates the port's packets can be sent to that port. "-" indicates the port's packets cannot be sent to that port.				

6.3.2. 802.1Q VLAN

A virtual LAN, commonly known as a VLAN, is a group of hosts with a common set of requirements that communicate as if they were attached to the Broadcast domain, regardless of their physical location. A VLAN has the same attributes as a physical LAN, but it allows for end stations to be grouped together even if they are not located on the same network switch. Network reconfiguration can be done through software instead of physically relocating devices.

VID- VLAN ID is the identification of the VLAN, which is basically used by the standard 802.1Q. It has 12 bits and allow the identification of 4096 (2¹2) VLANs. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes of TCI (Tag Control Information, starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 bytes	3 bits	1 bit	12 bits

• Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

Each port on the Switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1QVLAN-aware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

A broadcast frame (or a multicast frame for a multicast group that is known by the system) is duplicated only on ports that are members of the VID (except the ingress port itself), thus confining the broadcast to a specific domain.

• 802.1QPort base VLAN

With port-based VLAN membership, the port is assigned to a specific VLAN independent of the user or system attached to the port. This means all users attached to the port should be members of the same VLAN. The network administrator typically performs the VLAN assignment. The port configuration is static and cannot be automatically changed to another VLAN without manual reconfiguration.

As with other VLAN approaches, the packets forwarded using this method do not leak into other VLAN domains on the network. After a port has been assigned to a VLAN, the port cannot send to or receive from devices in another VLAN without the intervention of a Layer 3 device.

The device that is attached to the port likely has no understanding that a VLAN exists. The device simply knows that it is a member of a subnet and that the device should be able to talk to all other members of the subnet by simply sending information to the cable segment. The switch is responsible for identifying that the information came from a specific VLAN and for ensuring that the information gets to all other members of the VLAN. The switch is further responsible for ensuring that ports in a different VLAN do not receive the information.

This approach is quite simple, fast, and easy to manage in that there are no complex lookup tables required for VLAN segmentation. If port-to-VLAN association is done with an application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC), the performance is very good. An ASIC allows the port-to-VLAN mapping to be done at the hardware level.

Notice: The maximum VLAN group is 4094.

Node	Command	Description	
enable	show vlan	This command displays all of the VLAN	
		configurations.	
enable	show vlan <1-4094>	This command displays the VLAN	
		configurations.	
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to	
		configure node.	
configure	vlan <1~4094>	This command enables a VLAN and	
		enters the VLAN node.	
configure	no vlan <1~4094>	This command deletes a VLAN.	

6.3.2.1. VLAN Settings

6.3.2.1.1. CLI Configurations

vlan	show	This command displays the current	
		VLAN configurations.	
vlan	name STRING	This command assigns a name for the specific VLAN. The VLAN name should be the combination of the digit or the alphabet or hyphens (-) or underscores (_). The maximum length of the name is 16 characters.	
vlan	no name	This command configures the VLAN name to default. Note: The default VLAN name is "VLAN"+vlan-ID, VLAN1, VLAN2,	
vlan	add PORTLISTS	This command adds a port or a range of ports to the VLAN.	
vlan	fixed PORTLISTS	This command assigns ports for permanent member of the VLAN.	
vlan	no fixed PORTLISTS	This command removes all fixed member from the VLAN.	
configure	vlan range VLANLIST	This command configures a range of VLANs.	
configure	no vlan range VLANLIST	This command removes a range of VLANs.	
vlan-range	add PORTLISTS	This command adds a port or a range of ports to the VLANs.	
vlan-range	fixed PORTLISTS	This command assigns ports for permanent member of the VLAN group.	
vlan-range	no fixed PORTLISTS	This command removes all fixed member from the VLANs.	

6.3.2.1.2. Web Configurations

	VLAN					
	VLAN	Tag Settings	Port S	ettings		
V	VLAN Settings					
	VLAN ID VLAN Name Member Port From: To: Image: Constraint of the second s					
	Apply Refresh					
V	LAN List					
	VLAN ID	VLAN Name	VLAN Status	Member P	Port Action	
	1	VLAN1	Static	1-10		

Parameter	Description	
VLAN Settings		
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this entry; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.	
VLAN Name	Enter a descriptive name for the VLAN for identification purposes. The VLAN name should be the combination of the digit or the alphabet or hyphens (-) or underscores (_). The maximum length of the name is 16 characters.	
Member Port	Enter the port numbers you want the Switch to assign to the VLAN as members. You can designate multiple port numbers individually by using a comma (,) and by range with a hyphen (-).	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
VLAN List		
VLAN ID	This field displays the index number of the VLAN entry. Click the number to modify the VLAN.	
VLAN Name	This field displays the name of the VLAN.	
VLAN Status	This field displays the status of the VLAN. Static or Dynamic (802.1Q VLAN).	
Member Port	This field displays which ports have been assigned as members of the VLAN. This will display None if no ports have been assigned.	
Action	Click Delete to remove the VLAN. The VLAN 1 cannot be deleted.	

6.3.2.2. Tag Settings

6.3.2.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description	
enable	show vlan	This command displays all of the VLAN	
		configurations.	
enable	show vlan <1-4094>	This command displays the VLAN	
		configurations.	
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to	
		configure node.	
configure	vlan <1~4094>	This command enables a VLAN and	
		enters the VLAN node.	
vlan	show	This command displays the current	
		VLAN configurations.	
vlan	tagged PORTLISTS	This command assigns ports for tagged	
		member of the VLAN group. The ports	
		should be one/some of the permanent	
		members of the VLAN.	
vlan	no tagged PORTLISTS	This command removes all tagged	
		member from the VLAN.	
vlan	untagged PORTLISTS	This command assigns ports for untagged	
		member of the VLAN group. The ports	
		should be one/some of the permanent	
		members of the VLAN.	
vlan	no untagged PORTLISTS	This command removes all untagged	
		member from the VLAN.	

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#vlan 2 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)#fixed 1-6 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)#tagged 1-3

6.3.2.2.2. Web Configurations

			VLAN	
V	LAN Settings	Tag Settings	Port Settings	
Tag	Settings	_		
,	VLAN ID	From:	To:	
1	Tag Port :			
	○ Select All	O Deselect All		
		□6		
	□1 □2 □3 □4	5		
			Apply Refresh	
Tag	Status			
V	LAN ID	Tag Ports		UnTag Ports
	1		1-	6

Parameter	Description	
Tag Settings		
VLAN ID	Select a VLAN ID to configure its port tagging settings.	
Tag Port	Selecting a port which is a member of the selected VLAN ID will make it a tag port. This means the port will tag all outgoing frames transmitted with the VLAN ID.	
Select All	Click Select All to mark all member ports as tag ports.	
Deselect All	Click Deselect All to mark all member ports as untag ports.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
Tag Status		
VLAN ID	This field displays the VLAN ID.	
Tag Ports	This field displays the ports that have been assigned as tag ports.	
Untag Ports	This field displays the ports that have been assigned as untag ports.	

6.3.2.3. Port Settings

6.3.2.3.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description	
enable	show vlan	This command displays all of the	
		VLAN configurations.	
enable	show vlan <1-4094>	This command displays the VLAN	
		configurations.	
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to	
		configure node.	
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface	
		configure node.	
interface	acceptable frame type	This command configures the	
	(all tagged untagged)	acceptable frame type.	
		all - acceptable all frame types.	
		tagged - acceptable tagged frame	
		only.	
		untagged – acceptable untagged frame	
		only.	
interface	pvid <1-4094>	This command configures a VLAN ID	
		for the port default VLAN ID.	
interface	no pvid	This command configures 1 for the port	
		default VLAN ID.	
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range	
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.	
if-range	acceptable frame type	This command configures the	
	(all tagged untagged)	acceptable frame type.	
		all - acceptable all frame types.	
		tagged - acceptable tagged frame	
		only.	
		untagged – acceptable untagged frame	
		only.	
if-range	pvid <1-4094>	This command configures a VLAN ID	
		for the port default VLAN ID.	
if-range	no pvid	This command configures 1 for the port	
		default VLAN ID.	

6.3.2.3.2. Web Configurations

			/LAN		
VLAN Set	tings	Tag Settings Port	Settings		
Port Setting	s				
	Port	PVID			Acceptable Frame
From:	m: 1 • To: 1 • All •				
		Apply	Refresh		
Port Status	_		_	_	
Port	PVID	Acceptable Frame	Port	PVID	Acceptable Frame
1	1	All	2	1	All
3	1	All	4	1	All
5	4	All	6	1	All

Parameter	Description	
Port Settings		
Port	Select a port number to configure from the drop-down box. Select All to configure all ports at the same time.	
PVID	Select a PVID (Port VLAN ID number) from the drop-down box.	
Acceptable Frame	 Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are All, VLAN Untagged Only or VLAN Tagged Only. Select All from the drop-down list box to accept all untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting. Select VLAN Tagged Only to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames will be dropped. Select VLAN Untagged Only to accept only untagged frames on this port. All tagged frames will be dropped. 	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
Port Status		
Port	This field displays the port number.	
PVID	This field displays the Port VLAN ID number.	
Acceptable Frame	This field displays the type of frames allowed on the port. This will either display All or VLAN Tagged Only or VLAN Untagged Only.	

6.3.3. MAC VLAN

The MAC base VLAN allows users to create VLAN with MAC address. The MAC address can be the leading three or more bytes of the MAC address. For example, 00:01:02 or 00:03:04:05 or 00:01:02:03:04:05.

When the Switch receives packets, it will compare MAC-based VLAN configures. If the SA is matched the MAC-based VLAN configures, the Switch replace the VLAN with user configured and them forward them.

For example:

Configurations: 00:01:02, VLAN=23, Priority=2.

The packets with SA=00:01:02:xx:xx will be forwarded to VLAN 22 member ports.

Notice: The 802.1Q port base VLAN should be created first.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show mac-vlan	This command displays the all of the mac-vlan
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure node.
configure	mac-vlan	This command creates a mac-vlan entry with the
	STRINGS vlan	leading three or more bytes of mac address and the
	<1-4094>	VLAN and the priority.
	priority <0-7>	
configure	no mac-vlan entry	This command deletes a mac-vlan entry.
	STRINGS	
configure	no mac-vlan all	This command deletes all of the mac-vlan entries.

6.3.3.1. CLI Configurations

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#mac-vlan	00:01:02:03 vlan 111 priority 1
L2SWITCH(config)#mac-vlan	00:01:02:22:04 vlan 121 priority 1
L2SWITCH(config)#mac-vlan	00:01:22:22:04:05 vlan 221 priority 1

6.3.3.2. Web Configurations

		MAC VLAN			
MACINIAN C-W-			-	-	
MAC VLAN Settin	gs	_	_	_	_
N	IAC Address	VLAN			Priority
		(1~4	094)		0 🗸
HH:HH:HH:HH: HH:HH:HH:HH: MAC VLAN Table	HH will only filter 5 bytes of sou HH:HH will filter all bytes of sou	rce mac address. rce mac address. Apply Refresh			
Index	MAC Address	VLAN	Drie	-14.	Action
Index	00:01:02	5	Prio		Delete
2	00:0B:05:00	6	0		Delete
2	00.00.00	0	U		Delete

Parameter	Description	
MAC VLAN Settin	gs	
MAC Address	Configures the leading three or more bytes of the MAC address.	
VLAN	Configures the VLAN.	
Priority	Configures the 802.1Q priority.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
Action	Click Delete to delete the MAC VLAN profile.	

6.3.4. Q-in-Q VLAN (VLAN Stacking)

Q-in-Q tunneling is also known as VLAN stacking. Both of them use 802.1q double tagging technology. Q-in-Q is required by ISPs (Internet Service Provider) that need Transparent LAN services (TLS), and the service provider has their own set of VLAN, independent of customer VLANs. Typically, each service provider VLAN interconnects a group of sites belonging to a customer. However, a service provider VLAN could also be shared by a set of customers sharing the same end points and quality of service requirements of the VLAN. Double tagging is considered to be a relatively simpler way of implementing transparent LAN. This is accomplished by encapsulating Ethernet Frame. A second or outer VLAN tag is inserted in Ethernet frames sent over the ingress PE (Provider Edge). This VLAN tag corresponds to the VLAN of the Service Provider (SP). When the frame reaches the destination PE, the SP VLAN is stripped off. The DA of the encapsulated frame and the VLAN ID are used to take further L2 decisions, similar to an Ethernet frame arriving from a physical Ethernet port. The SP VLAN tag determines the VPLS (Virtual Private LAN Service) membership. Double tagging aggregates multiple VLANs within another VLAN and provides a private, dedicated Ethernet connection between customers to reach their subnet transparently across multiple networks. Thus service providers can create their own VLANs without interfering with customer VLANs by using double tagging. This allows them to connect customers to ISPs and ASPs (Application Service Provider).

The ports that are connected to the service provider VLANs are called tunnel ports, and the ports that are connected to the customer VLANs are called access (subscriber/customer) ports. When a port is configured as tunnel port, all the outgoing packets on this port will be sent out with SPVLAN (SPVID and 1p priority) tag. The incoming packet can have two tags (SPVLAN + CVLAN), one tag (SPVLAN or CVLAN), or no tag. In all cases, the packet is sent out with a SPVLAN tag. When a port is configured as an access port, the incoming traffic can have only a CVLAN (CVID and 1p priority) tag or no tag. Hence, all the packets that are being sent out of access ports will be untagged or single tagged (CVLAN). When a port is configured as a normal port, it will ignore the frames with double tagging.

Double Tagging Format

A VLAN tag (service provider VLAN stacking or customer IEEE 802.1Q) consists of the following three fields.

TPID Priority VID

TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier) is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates that whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. The value of this field is 0x8100 as defined in IEEE 802.1Q. Other vendors may use a different value, such as 0x9100.

Tunnel TPID is the VLAN stacking tag type the Switch adds to the outgoing frames sent through a Tunnel Port of the service provider's edge devices.

Priority refers to the IEEE 802.1p standard that allows the service provider to prioritize traffic based on the class of service (CoS) the customer has paid for. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.

VID is the VLAN ID. SP VID is the VID for the second or outer (service provider's) VLAN tag. CVID is the VID for the first or inner (Customer's) VLAN tag.

The frame formats for an untagged Ethernet frame; a single-tagged 802.1Q frame (customer) and a "double-tagged" 802.1Q frame (service provider) are shown as following:

untagged	DA	SA	Len or	Data	FCS						
frame			Etype								
single-tagged	DA	SA	TPID	Р	VID	Len or	Data	FCS			
frame						Etype					
double-tagged	DA	SA	Tunnel	Р	VID	TPID	Р	VID	Len or	Data	FCS
frame			TPID						Etype		

DA: Destination Address SA: Source Address Tunnel TPID: Tag Protocol Identifier added on a tunnel port P: 802.1p priority VID: VLAN ID Len or Etype: Length or Ethernet frame type Data: Frame data FCS: Frame Check Sequence

VLAN Stacking Port Roles

Each port can have three VLAN stacking "roles", Normal, Access Port and Tunnel Port.

- ✓ Select Normal for "regular" (non-VLAN stacking) IEEE 802.1Q frame switching.
- ✓ Select Access Port for ingress ports on the service provider's edge devices. The incoming frame is treated as "untagged", so a second VLAN tag (outer VLAN tag) can be added.
- ✓ Select Tunnel Port for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. All VLANs belonging to a customer can be aggregated into a single service provider's VLAN (using the outer VLAN tag defined by SP VID).

NOTE: In order to have the double tagged frames switching correctly, user has to configure a service provider's VLAN (SPVLAN) on the Q-in-Q switch. Then, the double tagged frames can be switched according to the SP VID. The SPVLAN should include all the related Tunnel and Access ports. Also, user has to configure the Tunnel posts as tagged ports and the Access ports as untagged ports.

6.3.4.1. VLAN Stacking

6.3.4.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show vlan-stacking	This command displays the current vlan-
		stacking type.
enable	show vlan-stacking tpid-	This command displays the TPID
	inform	configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	vlan-stacking (disable port-	This command disable the vlan stacking
	based selective)	or enable the vlan-stacking with port-
		based or selective on the switch.
configure	vlan-stacking tpid-table index	This command configures TPID table.
	<2-6> value STRINGS	
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
interface	vlan-stacking tunnel-tpid	This command sets TPID for a Q-in-Q
	index <1-6>	tunnel port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLIS	configure node.
	TS	
if-range	vlan-stacking tunnel-tpid	This command sets TPID for a Q-in-Q
	index <1-6>	tunnel port.

6.3.4.1.2. Web Configurations

Q-in-Q					
VLAN Stacking Port-based Q-in-Q					
VLAN Stacking Settings					
Action Disable					
Tur	nel TPID Index	TPID			
	0 (Default) 🗸	88a8	(0000~ffff)		
	Port	Tunnel TPID Index			
Fron	n: 1 🕶 To: 1 🕶	0 (Default) 🗸			
VLAN Stacking Status	Apply	Refresh			
Tunnel TPID Index		TPID			
0		88a8			
1		88a8			
2		88a8			
3		88a8			
Port	Tunnel TPID Index (TPID)	Port	Tunnel TPID Index (TPID)		
1	0 (88a8)	2	0 (88a8)		
3	0 (88a8)	4	0 (88a8)		
5	0 (88a8)	6	0 (88a8)		

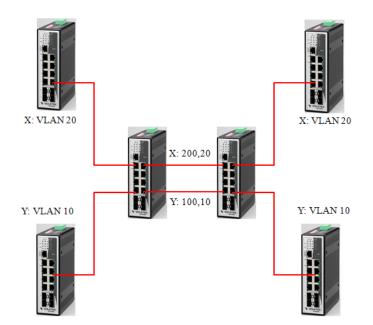
Parameter	Description			
VLAN Stacking Settings				
Action	Select one of the three modes, Disable or Port-Based or Selective for the VLAN stacking.			
Configures the TPID Table: The TPID table has 6 entries.				
Tunnel TPID Index	Selects the table index.			
Tunnel TPID Index	Selects the table index.			
Configures the Port TPID:				
Port	Selects a port or a range of ports which you want to configure.			
Tunnel TPID Index	Configures the index of the TPID Table for the specific ports.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			
Action	Click Delete to delete the MAC VLAN profile.			

6.3.4.2. Port-based Q-in-Q

Port-based Q-in-Q

Q-in-Q encapsulation is to convert a single tagged 802.1Q packet into a double tagged Q-in-Q packet. The Q-in-Q encapsulation can be based on port or traffic. Port-based Q-in-Q is to encapsulate all the packets incoming to a port with the same SPVID outer tag. The mode is more inflexible.

In the following example figure, both X and Yare Service Provider's Network (SPN) customers with VPN tunnels between their head offices and branch offices respectively. Both have an identical VLAN tag for their VLAN group. The service provider can separate these two VLANs within its network by adding tag 100to distinguish customer X and tag 200todistinguish customer Y at edge device A and then stripping those tags at edge device B as the data frames leave the network.



This example shows how to configure switch A with ports 1 on the Switch to tag incoming frames with the service provider's VID of 200 (ports are connected to customer X network) and configure port 7 to service provider's VID of 100 (ports are connected to customer Y network). This example also shows how to set the priority for port 1 to 3 and port 7 to 4.

L2SWITCH(config)# vlan-stacking port-based L2SWITCH(config)# vlan-stacking tpid-table index 2 value 88a8 L2SWITCH(config)# vlan 10 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# fixed 5,6 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# tagged 5 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# exit L2SWITCH(config)# vlan 100 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# fixed 5,6 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# tagged 6 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# exit L2SWITCH(config)# vlan 20 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# fixed 1,2 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# tagged 1 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# exit L2SWITCH(config)# vlan 200 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# fixed 1,2 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# tagged 2 L2SWITCH(config-vlan)# exit L2SWITCH(config)# interface gigaethernet1/0/1 L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking port-based role access L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking spvid 200 L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking priority 3 L2SWITCH(config)# interface gigaethernet1/0/2 L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking port-based role tunnel L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking tunnel-tpid index 2 L2SWITCH(config)# interface gigaethernet1/0/5 L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking port-based role access L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking spvid 100 L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking priority 4 L2SWITCH(config)# interface gigaethernet1/0/6 L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking port-based role tunnel L2SWITCH(config-if)# vlan-stacking tunnel-tpid index 2 L2SWITCH(config-if)# exite L2SWITCH(config)# exit L2SWITCH# show vlan-stacking L2SWITCH# show vlan-stacking tpid-table L2SWITCH# show vlan-stacking port-based-ging

Node	Command	Description
enable	show vlan-stacking portbased-	This command displays the port-based
	qinq	q-in-Q configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
interface	vlan-stacking port-based priority	This command sets the priority in port
	<0~7>	based Q-in-Q.
interface	vlan-stacking port-based role	This command sets VLAN stacking
	(tunnel access normal)	port role.

6.3.4.2.1. CLI Configurations

interface	vlan-stacking port-based spvid	This command sets the service
	<1~4096>	provider's VID of the specified port.
interface	vlan-stacking tunnel-tpid index	This command sets TPID for a Q-in-Q
	<1-6>	tunnel port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.
if-range	vlan-stacking port-based priority	This command sets the priority in port
	<0~7>	based Q-in-Q.
if-range	vlan-stacking port-based role	This command sets VLAN stacking
	(tunnel access normal)	port role.
if-range	vlan-stacking port-based spvid	This command sets the service
	<1~4096>	provider's VID of the specified port.
if-range	vlan-stacking tunnel-tpid index	This command sets TPID for a Q-in-Q
	<1-6>	tunnel port.

6.3.4.2.2. Web Configurations

Q-in-Q							
VLAN Stacking Port-based Q-in-Q							
Port-based Q-in-Q Settings							
ront-baseu v	a-m-a settings	_	_	_	_	_	_
Port Role SPVID Priority							
From: (1 🕶 To: 🛛 🕶	Norma	al 🕶 🗌	1	(1~4094)	0 🗸	•
Apply Refresh Port-based Q-in-Q Status							
Port	Role	SPVID	Priority	Port	Role	SPVID	Priority
1	Normal	1	0	2	Normal	1	0
3	Normal	1	0	4	Normal	1	0
5	Normal	1	0	6	Normal	1	0

Parameter	Description			
Port-based Q-in-Q Settings				
Port	Selects a port or a range of ports which you want to configure.			
Role	Selects one of the three roles, Normal and Access and Tunnel , for the specific ports.			
SPVID	Configures the service provider's VLAN.			
Priority	Configures the priority for the specific ports.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			

o delete the MAC VLAN profile.
o delete the MAC VLAN profile.

6.4. DHCP Option (Option 82)

DHCP Option 82 is the "DHCP Relay Agent Information Option". Option 82 was designed to allow a DHCP Relay Agent to insert circuit specific information into a request that is being forwarded to a DHCP server. Specifically the option works by setting two sub-options: Circuit ID and Remote ID.

The DHCP option 82 is working on the DHCP snooping or/and DHCP relay.

The switch will monitor the DHCP packets and append some information as below to the DHCPDISCOVER and DHCPREQUEST packets. The switch will remove the DHCP Option 82 from the DHCPOFFER and DHCPACK packets. The DHCP server will assign IP domain to the client dependent on these information.

The maximum length of the information is 32 characters.

In residential, metropolitan Ethernet-access environments, DHCP can centrally manage the IP address assignments for a large number of subscribers. When the DHCP option-82 feature is enabled on the switch, a subscriber device is identified by the switch port through which it connects to the network (in addition to its MAC address). Multiple hosts on the subscriber LAN can be connected to the same port on the access switch and are uniquely identified.

When you enable the DHCP snooping information option 82 on the switch, this sequence of events occurs:

- The host (DHCP client) generates a DHCP request and broadcasts it on the network.
- When the switch receives the DHCP request, it adds the option-82 information in the packet. The option-82 information contains the switch MAC address (the remote-ID sub-option) and the port identifier, vlan-mod-port, from which the packet is received (the circuit-ID sub-option).
- If the IP address of the relay agent is configured, the switch adds the IP address in the DHCP packet.
- The switch forwards the DHCP request that includes the option-82 field to the DHCP server.
- The DHCP server receives the packet. If the server is option-82 capable, it can use the remote ID, the circuit ID, or both to assign IP addresses and implement policies, such as restricting the number of IP addresses that can be assigned to a single remote ID or circuit ID. Then the DHCP server **echoes** the option-82 field in the DHCP reply.
- The DHCP server unicast's the reply to the switch if the request was relayed to the server by the switch. When the client and server are on the same subnet, the server broadcasts the reply. The switch verifies that it originally inserted the option-82 data by inspecting the remote ID and possibly the circuit ID fields. The switch **removes** the option-82 field and forwards the packet to the switch port that connects to the DHCP client that sent the DHCP request.

Option Frame Format:

Code	Len	Agent Information Field					
82	Ν	i1	i2	i3	i4	• • •	iN

The Agent Information field consists of a sequence of Sub-Opt/Length value for each sub-option, encoded in the following manner:

Sub- Option	Len			Sub-Opt	ion Value		
1	N	s1	s2	s3	s4	• • •	sN

DHCP Agent	Sub-Option Description
Sub-option Code	
1	Agent Circuit ID Sub-option
2	Agent Remote ID Sub-option

Circuit ID Sub-option Format:

Sub-option	Length	Information
Туре		
0x01		Circuit Form

Remote ID Sub-option Frame Format:

Sub-option Type	Length	Туре	Length	MAC Address
0x02	8	0	6	6

Circuit Form:

The circuit form is a flexible architecture. It allows user to combine any information or the system configurations into the circuit sub-option.

The Circuit Form is a string format. And its maximum length is 100 characters.

The keyword, %SPACE, will be replaced with a space character.

The other keywords get system configurations from the system and then replace the keyword and its leading code in the Circuit form. Eventually, the content of the circuit form is part of the payload on the DHCP option 82 packet.

Rules:

- The keyword must have a leading code '%'. For example: *%HOSTNAME*.
- If there are any characters following the keywords, you must add '+' between the keyword and character. For example: *%HOSTNAME+/*.
- If there are any characters before the keyword, you must add '+' between the character and the keyword. For example: *Test+%HOSTNAME*.

Keyword:

HOSTNAME - Add the system name into the Circuit sub-option..

SPACE	- Add a space character.
SVLAN	- Add the service provider VLAN ID into the Circuit sub-option.
	If the service provider VLAN is not defined, the system will return
	PVLAN.

- Add the customer VLAN ID into the Circuit sub-option.
If the CVLAN is not defined, the system returns 0.
- Add the transmit port ID into the Circuit sub-option.
- Add the frame ID into the Circuit sub-option.
The frame ID is configured with the CLI command, "dhcp-
options option82 circuit_frame VALUE". Or GUI Circuit Frame.
- Add the shelf ID into the Circuit sub-option.
The shelf ID is configured with the CLI command, "dhcp-
options option82 circuit_shelf VALUE". Or GUI Circuit Shelf.
- Add the slot ID into the Circuit sub-option.
The slot ID is configured with the CLI command, "dhcp-options
option82 circuit_slot VALUE". Or GUI Circuit Slot.

For Example:

HOSTNAME=L2SWITCH. SVLAN=44. CVLAN=32.

Circuit

Form=RD+%SPACE+Department+%SPACE+%HOSTNAME+%SPACE+%PORT+_+%SVLAN+.+%CVLAN The circuit sub-option result is: RD Department L2SWITCH 1_44.32

Node	Command	Description
enable	show dhep-options	This command displays the DHCP options
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	dhcp-options option82	This command disables / enables the DHCP
	(disable enable)	option 82on the Switch.
configure	dhcp-options option82	This command configures the information of
	circuit_id STRING	the circuit ID sub-option.
configure	no dhcp-options	This command removes the information of the
	option82 circuit_id	circuit ID sub-option.
configure	dhcp-options option82	This command configures the information of
	remote_id STRING	the remote ID sub-option.
configure	no dhcp-options	This command removes the information of the
	option82 remote_id	remote ID sub-option.
configure	dhcp-options option82	This command configures the frame ID for the
	circuit_frame VALUE	circuit sub-option.
configure	dhcp-options option82	This command configures the shelf ID for the
	circuit_shelf VALUE	circuit sub-option.
configure	dhcp-options option82	This command configures the slot ID for the
	circuit_slot VALUE	circuit sub-option.

6.4.1.CLI Configurations

6.4.2.Web Configurations

	DHCP Options		
DF	ICP Option 82 Setting	ŝ	
	Option 82 State	Disable 🗸	
	Option 82 Frame	1	
	Option 82 Shelf	0	
	Option 82 Slot	0	
	Circuit-ID String	%HOSTNAME+%SPACE+eth/+%FRAME+/+%SHELF+/+%SLOT+:+%PORT+_+%SVLAN+:	
	Remote-ID String	%HOSTNAME+%SPACE+eth/+%FRAME+/+%SHELF+/+%SLOT+:+%PORT+_+%SVLAN+:	
DI			
DF	ICP Option 82 Port Se	ttings	
	Port	1 🗸	
	Option 82 State	Disable 🗸	
	Circuit-ID String		
	Remote-ID String		
		Apply Refresh	
DI	HCP Option 82 Port St	atus	
		Port 1 🔷	
	Option 82 State	Disable	
	Circuit-ID String		
	Remote-ID String	Port 2	
	Option 82 State	Disable	
	Circuit-ID String		
	Remote-ID String	•	

Parameter	Description	
DHCP Option 82 Settings		
State	Select this option to enable / disable the DHCP option 82 on the Switch.	
Circuit Frame	The frame ID for the circuit sub-option.	
Circuit Shelf	The shelf ID for the circuit sub-option.	
Circuit Slot	The slot ID for the circuit sub-option.	
Circuit-ID String The String of the circuit ID sub-option information		
Remote-ID String	The String of the remote ID sub-option information.	
DHCP Option 82 Port Settings		

Port	The port ID.	
Circuit-ID String	The String of the circuit ID sub-option information for the specific port.	
Remote-ID String	The String of the remote ID sub-option information for the specific port.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
DHCP Option 82 Port Status		
	The field displays all of the ports' configurations.	

6.5. DHCP Relay

Because the *DHCPDISCOVER message is a broadcast message*, and broadcasts only cross other segments when they are explicitly routed, you might have to configure a DHCP Relay Agent on the router interface so that all DHCPDISCOVER messages can be forwarded to your DHCP server. Alternatively, you can configure the router to forward DHCP messages and BOOTP message. *In a routed network, you would need DHCP Relay Agents if you plan to implement only one DHCP server*.

The DHCP Relay that either a host or an IP router that listens for DHCP client messages being broadcast on a subnet and then forwards those DHCP messages directly to a configured DHCP server. The DHCP server sends DHCP response messages directly back to the DHCP relay agent, which then forwards them to the DHCP client. The DHCP administrator uses DHCP relay agents to centralize DHCP servers, avoiding the need for a DHCP server on each subnet.

Most of the time in small networks DHCP uses broadcasts however there are some circumstances where unicast addresses will be used. A router for such a subnet receives the DHCP broadcasts, converts them to unicast (with a destination MAC/IP address of the configured DHCP server, source MAC/IP of the router itself). The field identified as the GIADDR in the main DHCP page is populated with the IP address of the interface on the router it received the DHCP request on. The DHCP server uses the **GIADDR** field to identify the subnet the device and select an IP address from the correct pool. The DHCP server then sends the DHCP OFFER back to the router via unicast which then converts it back to a broadcast and out to the correct subnet containing the device requesting an address.

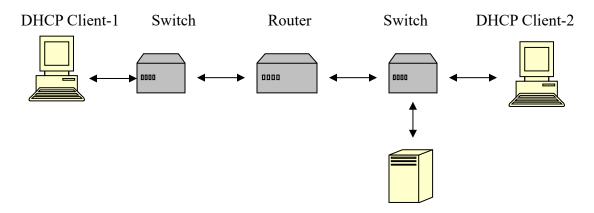
Configurations:

Users can enable/disable the DHCP Relay on the Switch. Users also can enable/disable the DHCP Relay on a specific VLAN. If the DHCP Relay on the Switch is disabled, the DHCP Relay is disabled on all VLANs even some of the VLAN DHCP Relay are enabled.

Applications

• Application-1 (Over a Router)

The DHCP cleint-1 and DHCP client-2 are located in different IP segments. But they allocate IP address from the same DHCP server.

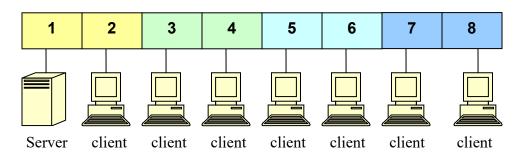


DHCP Server

• Application-2 (Local in different VLANs)

The DHCP cleint-1 and DHCP client-2 are located in different VLAN. But they allocate IP address from the same DHCP server.





VLAN 1: port 1,2 (Management VLAN) VLAN 2: port 3, 4 VLAN 3: port 5, 6 VLAN 4: port 7, 8

DHCP Server \rightarrow Port 1. DHCP Client \rightarrow Port 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8.

Result: Hosts connected to port 2,3,4,5,6,7,8 can get IP from DHCP server.

Note: *The DHCP Server must connect to the management VLAN member ports. The DHCP Relay in management VLAN should be enabled.*

Node	Command	Description
enable	show dhcp relay	This command displays the current configurations
		for the DHCP relay.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	dhcp relay	This command disables/enables the DHCP relay
	(disable enable)	on the switch.
configure	dhcp relay vlan	This command enables the DHCP relay function
	VLAN_RANGE	on a VLAN or a range of VLANs.
configure	no dhcp relay vlan	This command disables the DHCP relay function
	VLAN_RANGE	on a VLAN or a range of VLANs.
configure	dhcp helper-address	This command configures the DHCP server's IP
	IP_ADDRESS	address.

6.5.1.CLI Configurations

configure	no dhep helper-	This command removes the DHCP server's IP
	address	address.

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#interface eth0 L2SWITCH(config-if)#ip address 172.20.1.101/24 L2SWITCH(config-if)#ip address default-gateway 172.20.1.1 L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp relay enable L2SWITCH(config)# dhcp relay vlan 1 L2SWITCH(config)# dhcp helper-address 172.20.1.1

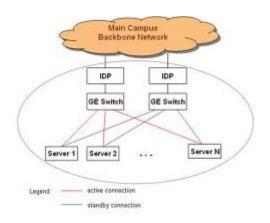
6.5.2. Web Configurations

	DHCP Relay			
DH	CP Relay Settings			
	State VLAN State	Disable 🗸		
	DHCP Server IP	0.0.0.0		
	Apply Refresh			
DH	CP Relay Status			
	DHCP Relay State		Disabled	
	Enabled on	VLAN	None	
	DHCP Serv	er IP	0.0.0.0	

Parameter	Description	
DHCP Relay Settings		
State	Enables / disables the DHCP relay for the Switch.	
VLAN State	Enables / disables the DHCP relay on the specific VLAN(s).	
DHCP Server IP	Configures the DHCP server's IP address.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

6.6. Dual Homing

Dual Homing, a network topology in which a device is connected to the network by the way of two independent access points (points of attachment). One access point is considered as a primary connection while other is standby. The standby access point is getting activated once primary connection fails.



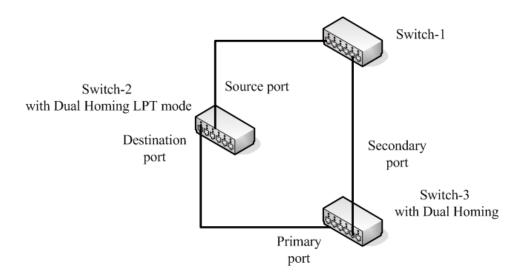
How Dual-Homing Works?

Let us assume that both the primary and secondary connections are connected to Internet by means of different ways. For example, primary connection is connected to a physical network whereas the secondary one is attached to a wireless network. When dual homing feature is enabling, by default through primary connection the device will get connect to Internet at the same time the secondary connection will be shutdown. If the port or all the ports of primary connection are link-down then the device will replace its primary connection by the secondary one to connect with the Internet. If in any situation the secondary connection also link-down, device will do nothing. Secondary connection only works when primary connection is getting disconnect.

• Dual Homing LPT mode vs Dual Homing :

The following figure is represented a ring connectivity between Switch-1, Switch-2 and Switch-3. In the discussed scenario, the Dual Homing LPT mode is enabled in the Switch-2 and Dual Homing is enabled in the Switch-3. Based on the mechanism of Dual Homing, the Secondary port of the Switch-3 will be shutdown which ensures a loop free ring connectivity.

Consider the scenario, if the source port between the Switch-2 and Switch-1 is link down, then the Destination port will automatically shutdown by the Dual Homing LPT mode. When the Switch-3 detects the Primary port gets link down, it will enable its Secondary port for continuing the communication. As a result, the hosts connected to the Switch-3 still can communicate with the hosts of Switch-1 without any interruption.



6.6.1.CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show dual-homing	This command displays the dual-homing
		information.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	dual-homing	This command disables / enables the dual-homing
	(disable enable)	function for the system.
configure	dual-homing	This command sets the dual-homing primary
	primary-channel	channel for the system. The channel can be a
	(port trunk) VALUE	single port or a trunk group.
configure	no dual-homing	This command removes the dual-homing primary
	primary-channel	channel for the system.
configure	dual-homing	This command sets the dual-homing secondary
	secondary-channel	channel for the system. The channel can be a
	(port trunk) VALUE	single port or a trunk group.
configure	no dual-homing	This command removes the dual-homing
	secondary-channel	secondary channel for the system.

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#link-aggregation 1 ports 5-6 L2SWITCH(config)#link-aggregation 1 enable L2SWITCH(config)#dual-homing primary-channel port 2 L2SWITCH(config)#dual-homing secondary –channel trunk 1 L2SWITCH(config)#dual-homing enable

6.6.2.Web Configurations

	Dual Homing				
Du	al Homing Settings				
	State	Disable 🗸			
	Group ID	1 🗸			
	Group State	Disable 🗸			
	Primary Channel	Add V Port V 0			
	Secondary Channel	Add V Port V 0			
		Apply Refresh			
Du	al Homing Status				
	Group Id	1			
	Group State	Disabled			
	Primary Channel	None			
	Secondary Channel	None			
	Group Id	2			
	Group State	Disabled			
	Primary Channel	None			
	Secondary Channel	None			
	0				
	Group Id	3			
	Group State	Disabled			
	Primary Channel	None			
	Secondary Channel	None			

Parameter	Description	
Dual Homing Settings		
State	Enables / disables the Dual-Homing for the Switch.	
Group ID	Selects a group which you want to configure.	
Group State	Enables / disables the Dual-Homing for a group.	
Primary channel	Configures / Resets the primary channel for a group. The channel can be single port or a trunk group.	
Secondary channel	Configures / Resets the secondary channel for a group. The channel can be single port or a trunk group.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	

Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
---------	---

6.7. EEE

The Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE) is an IEEE 802.3az standard that is designed to reduce power consumption in Ethernet networks during idle periods.

EEE can be enabled on devices that support low power idle (LPI) mode. Such devices can save power by entering LPI mode during periods of low utilization. In LPI mode, systems on both ends of the link can save power by shutting down certain services. EEE provides the protocol needed to transition into and out of LPI mode in a way that is transparent to upper layer protocols and applications.

Notice: This feature is for Ethernet copper ports only.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show interface IFNAME	This command displays the current port
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure
		node.
interface	eee (disable enable)	This command enables / disables the EEE
		function on this port.

6.7.1.CLI Configurations

Example:

- L2SWITCH#configure terminal
- L2SWITCH(config)#interface 1/0/1

6.7.2.Web Configurations

Energy Efficient Ethernet				
Energy Efficient Ethernet Settings				
EEE Ports State:(The feature for copper ports only.)				
O Select All O Deselect All				
Apply Refresh				

Parameter	Description		
Energy Efficient Eth	hernet Settings		
EEE Port State	Click a port to enable IEEE 802.3az Energy Efficient Ethernet on that port.		

Select All	Click this to enable IEEE 802.3az Energy Efficient Ethernet across all ports.
Deselect All	Click this to disable IEEE 802.3az Energy Efficient Ethernet across all ports.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.8. ERPS

The ITU-T G.8032 Ethernet Ring Protection Switching feature implements protection switching mechanisms for Ethernet layer ring topologies. This feature uses the G.8032 **Ethernet Ring Protection (ERP)** protocol, defined in ITU-T G.8032, to provide protection for Ethernet traffic in a ring topology, while ensuring that no loops are within the ring at the Ethernet layer. The loops are prevented by blocking traffic on either a predetermined link or a failed link.

The Ethernet ring protection functionality includes the following:

- Loop avoidance
- The use of learning, forwarding, and Filtering Database (FDB) mechanisms

Loop avoidance in an Ethernet ring is achieved by guaranteeing that, at any time, traffic may flow on all but one of the ring links. This particular link is called the **ring protection link (RPL)** and under normal conditions this ring link is blocked, i.e., not used for service traffic. One designated Ethernet ring node, the **RPL owner** node, is responsible to block traffic at one end of the RPL. Under an Ethernet ring failure condition, the RPL owner node is responsible for unblocking its end of the RPL, unless the RPL has failed, allowing the RPL to be used for traffic. The other Ethernet ring node adjacent to the RPL, the **RPL neighbor** node, may also participate in blocking or unblocking its end of the RPL.

The Ethernet rings could support a multi-ring/ladder network that consists of conjoined Ethernet rings by one or more interconnection points. The protection switching mechanisms and protocol defined in this Recommendation shall be applicable for a multi-ring/ladder network, if the following principles are adhered to:

- R-APS channels are not shared across Ethernet ring interconnections;
- on each ring port, each traffic channel and each R-APS channel are controlled (e.g., for blocking or flushing) by the Ethernet ring protection control process (ERP control process) of only one Ethernet ring;
- Each major ring or sub-ring must have its own RPL.

In an Ethernet ring, without congestion, with all Ethernet ring nodes in the idle state (i.e., no detected failure, no active automatic or external command and receiving only "NR, RB" R-APS messages), with less than 1200 km of ring fiber circumference and fewer than 16 Ethernet ring nodes, the switch completion time (transfer time as defined in [ITU-T G.808.1]) for a failure on a ring link shall be less than **50ms**.

The ring protection architecture relies on the existence of an **APS protocol** to coordinate ring protection actions around an Ethernet ring.

The Switch supports up to six rings.

Guard timer -- All ERNs use a guard timer. The guard timer prevents the possibility of forming a closed loop and prevents ERNs from applying outdated R-APS messages. The guard timer activates when an ERN receives information about a local switching request, such as after a switch fail (SF), manual switch (MS), or forced switch (FS). When this timer

expires, the ERN begins to apply actions from the R-APS it receives. This timer cannot be manually stopped.

Wait to restore (WTR) timer -- The RPL owner uses the WTR timer. The WTR timer applies to the revertive mode to prevent frequent triggering of the protection switching due to port flapping or intermittent signal failure defects. When this timer expires, the RPL owner sends a R-APS (NR, RB) through the ring.

Wait to Block (WTB) timers -- This wait-to-block timer is activated on the RPL owner. The RPL owner uses WTB timers before initiating an RPL block and then reverting to the idle state after operator-initiated commands, such as for FS or MS conditions, are entered. Because multiple FS commands are allowed to co-exist in a ring, the WTB timer ensures that the clearing of a single FS command does not trigger the re-blocking of the RPL. The WTB timer is defined to be 5 seconds longer than the guard timer, which is enough time to allow a reporting ERN to transmit two R-APS messages and allow the ring to identify the latent condition. When clearing a MS command, the WTB timer prevents the formation of a closed loop due to the RPL owner node applying an outdated remote MS request during the recovery process.

Hold-off timer -- Each ERN uses a hold-off timer to delay reporting a port failure. When the timer expires, the ERN checks the port status. If the issue still exists, the failure is reported. If the issue does not exist, nothing is reported.

ERPS revertive and non-revertive switching

ERPS considers revertive and non-revertive operation. In revertive operation, after the condition (s) causing a switch has cleared, the traffic channel is restored to the working transport entity, i.e. blocked on the RPL. In the case of clearing of a defect, the traffic channel reverts after the expiry of a WTR timer, which is used to avoid toggling protection states in case of intermittent defects. In non-revertive operation, the traffic channel continues to use the RPL, if it is not failed, after a switch condition has cleared.

Control VLAN:

The pure ERPS control packets domain only, no other packets are transmitted in this vlan to guarantee no delay for the ERPS. So when you configure a Control VLAN for a ring, the vlan should be a new one. The ERPS will create this control vlan and its member ports automatically. The member port should have the Left and Right ports only.

In ERPS, the control packets and data packets are separated in different vlans. The control packets are transmitted in a vlan which is called the Control VLAN.

Instance:

For ERPS version 2, the instance is a profile specifies a control vlan and a data vlan or multiple data vlans for the ERPS. In ERPS, it can separate the control packets and data packets in different vlans. The control packets is in the Control VLAN and the data packets can be in one or multiple data vlan. And then user can assign an instance to an ERPS ring easily.

In ERPS version 1, if a port is blocked by ERPS, all packets are blocked. In ERPS version 2, if a port is blocked by a ring of ERPS, only the packets belong to the vlans in the instance are blocked.

Notice:

Control VLAN and Instance:

In CLI or Web configurations, there are the Control VLAN and the Instance settings. If the Control VLAN is configured for a ring and you want to configure an instance for the ring. The control vlan of the instance must be same as the Control VLAN; otherwise, you will get an error. If you still want to use this instance, you can change the Control VLAN to same as the control vlan of the instance first. And then configures the instance.

Notice:

The ring ports should configure as below:

- Flow control off.
- 1000M Nway.
- Allow to enable up to 2 rings.

6.8.1. Ring Settings

6.8.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show erps	This command displays the ERPS configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure node.
configure	erps enable	This command enables the global ERPS on the Switch.
configure	no erps enable	This command disables the global ERPS on the Switch.
configure	erps ring-id <1-255>	This command creates an ERPS ring and its ID and enter ERPS node.
configure	no erps ring-id <1-255>	This command creates an ERPS ring and enter ERPS node to configure detail ring configurations.
erps-ring	show	This command displays the configurations of the ring.
erps-ring	control-vlan <1-4094>	This command configures a control-vlan for the ERPS ring.
erps-ring	guard-timer <10-2000>	This command configures the Guard Timer for the ERPS ring. (default:500ms)
erps-ring	holdoff-timer <0-10000>	This command configures the Hold-off Timer for the ERPS ring. (default:0 ms)
erps-ring	left-port PORTID type [owner neighbor normal]	This command configures the left port and type for the ERPS ring.

erps-ring	mel <0-7>	This command configures a Control MEL for the ERPS ring.
erps-ring	name STRING	This command configures a name for the ERPS ring.
erps-ring	revertive	This command configures the revertive mode for the ERPS ring.
erps-ring	no revertive	This command configures then on- revertive mode for the ERPS ring.
erps-ring	right-port PORTID type [owner neighbor normal]	This command configures the right port and type for the ERPS ring.
erps-ring	ring enable	This command enables the ring.
erps-ring	no ring enable	This command disables the ring.
erps-ring	version (v1 v2)	This command configures a version for the
		ERPS ring.
erps-ring	wtr-timer <5-720>	This command configures the WTR Timer
		for the ERPS ring. (default: 5 minutes)

6.8.1.2. Web Configurations

		ERPS	
Ring	Instance		
ERPS Global Settings			
Global State	Disable 🗸		
ERPS Ring Settings			
Ring ID Ring Name Instance Control VLAN Holdoff Timer (ms) MEL Left Port	(1~255) 0 (0:Default, 0~30) (1~4094) 0 (0~10000) 7 (0~7) None V Normal V	State Revertive Ring Type Version WTR Timer (sec) Guard Timer (ms) Right Port	Disable ▼ Enable ▼ Major-ring ▼ v2 ▼ 300 (5~720) 500 (10~2000) None ▼ Normal ▼
	Apply	Refresh	
ERPS Ring Status			

Parameter	Description		
ERPS Global Setti	ngs		
Global State	Enables/disables the global ERPS state.		

ERPS Ring Settings			
Ring ID	Configures the ring ID. The Valid value is from 1 to 255.		
State	Enables/disables the ring state.		
Ring Name	Configures the ring name.(Up to 32 characters)		
Revertive	Enables/disables the revertive mode.		
Instance	Configures the instance for the ring. The Valid value is from 0 to 30. 0-Disable means the ERPS is running in version 1. The control VLAN of the instance should be same as below Control VLAN.		
Control VLAN	Configures the Control VLAN which is the ERPS control packets domain for the ring.		
Version	Configures the version for the ring.		
Hold-off Timer	Configures the Hold-off time for the ring. The Valid value is from 0 to 10000 (ms).		
WTR Timer	Configures the WTR time for the ring. The Valid value is from 5 to 12 (min).		
MEL	Configures the Control MEL for the ring. The Valid value is from 0 to 7. The default is 7.		
Guard Timer	Configures the Guard time for the ring. The Valid value is from 10 to 2000 (ms).		
Left Port	Configures the left port and its type for the ring. The valid port type is one of Owner, Neighbor or Normal.		
Right Port	Configures the right port and its type for the ring. The valid port type is one of Owner, Neighbor or Normal.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

6.8.2. Instance

For ERPS version 2, the instance is a profile specifies a control vlan and a data vlan or multiple data vlans for the ERPS. In ERPS, it can separate the control packets and data packets in different vlans. The control packets is in the Control VLAN and the data packets can be in one or multiple data vlan. And then user can assign an instance to an ERPS ring easily.

In ERPS version 1, if a port is blocked by ERPS, all packets are blocked. In ERPS version 2, if a port is blocked by a ring of ERPS, only the packets belong to the

vlans in the instance are blocked.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show erps instance	This command displays all of the ERPS
		instance configurations.
enable	show erps instance <1-	This command displays the specific ERPS
	30>	instance configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	erps instance	This command enters the instance configure
_		node.
config-	instance <1-30>	This command configures a new instance and
erps-inst	control-vlan <1-4094>	specifies its control VLAN and data VLANs.
	data-vlan	
	VLANLISTS	
config-	no instance <1-30>	This command removes an instance.
erps-inst		
config-	show	This command displays all of the instance
erps-inst		configurations.

6.8.2.1. CLI Configurations

6.8.2.2. Web Configurations

ERPS					
	Ring	Instance			
ERPS	Instance Settings				_
	stance	(1~30) (1~4094)	Apply	Data VLAN Refresh	(Multiple VLAN List, e.g. 1,2,5,10)
ERPS	Instance Status				
	Instance Control VLAN	1		Data VLAN	1
			De	lete	

Parameter	Description
Instance Settings	
Instance	Configures the instance ID. The valid value is from 1 to 31.
Control VLAN	Configures the control VLAN for the instance. The valid value is from 1 to 4094.
Data VLAN	Configures the data VLAN for the instance. The valid value is from 1 to 4094. It can be one or multiple VLANs.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.9. Link Aggregation

Link Aggregation (Trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical highercapacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.

However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports. The Switch supports both static and dynamic link aggregation.

Note: In a properly planned network, it is recommended to implement static link aggregation only. This ensures increased network stability and control over the trunk groups on your Switch.

6.9.1. Static Trunk

6.9.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show link-aggregation	The command displays the current
		trunk configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	link-aggregation [GROUP_ID]	The command disables / enables the
	(disable enable)	trunk on the specific trunk group.
configure	link-aggregation [GROUP_ID]	The command configures the load
	load-balance (mac ip)	balance algorithm for the trunk
		group.
configure	link-aggregation [GROUP_ID]	The command adds ports to a
	interface PORTLISTS	specific trunk group.
configure	no link-aggregation [GROUP_ID]	The commands delete ports from a
	interface PORTLISTS	specific trunk group.

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#link-aggregation 1 enable L2SWITCH(config)#link-aggregation 1 ports 1-4

6.9.1.2. Web Configurations

		L	ink Aggregation	
Static Tru	nk	LACP	LACP Info.	
Static Trunk	Settings			
Group State Load Balan Member Po	ce MA	oup 1 👻 Disabl	e 🗸	
○ Select	All O Des	elect All		
	06			
□1 □2	3 4 5			
		[Apply Refresh	
Trunk Group	Status			
Group ID	State	Load Balance		Member Ports
1	Disabled	MAC		
2	Disabled	MAC		
3	Disabled	MAC		
Member P	orts: T is Trunk me	mber port but no lin	k, A is Trunk member a	nd link up.

Parameter Description

Trunk Group Settin	ngs
Group State	Select the group ID to use for this trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports. Select Enable to use this static trunk group.
Load Balance	Configures the load balance algorithm (MAC/IP) for the specific trunk group.
Member Ports	Select the ports to be added to the static trunk group.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.9.2. LACP

The Switch adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking. The IEEE 802.3ad standard describes the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) for dynamically creating and managing trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups. LACP also allows port redundancy, that is, if an operational port fails, then one of the "standby" ports become operational without user intervention.

Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, and duplex mode and flow control settings.
- Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

System Priority:

The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP "server". The LACP "server" controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP), the smaller the number, the higher the priority level.

System ID:

The LACP system ID is the combination of the LACP system priority value and the MAC address of the router.

Administrative Key:

The administrative key defines the ability of a port to aggregate with other ports. A port's ability to aggregate with other ports is determined by these factors:

- Port physical characteristics, such as data rate, duplex capability, and point-topoint or shared medium.
- Configuration restrictions that you establish.

Port Priority:

The port priority determines which ports should be put in standby mode when there is a hardware limitation that prevents all compatible ports from aggregating.

Default Settings

The default System Priority is 32768. The default group LACP state is disabled for all groups.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show lacp counters	This command displays the LACP counters
	[GROUP_ID]	for the specific group or all groups.
enable	show lacp port_priority	This command c displays the port priority for
		the LACP.
enable	show lacp sys_id	This command displays the actor's and
		partner's system ID.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
	_	node.
configure	lacp (disable enable)	This command disables / enables the LACP
C		on the switch.
configure	lacp GROUP ID	This command disables / enables the LACP
C	(disable enable)	on the specific trunk group.
configure	clear lacp counters	This command clears the LACP statistics for
0	[PORT ID]	the specific port or all ports.
configure	lacp system-priority <1-	This command configures the system priority
e e nin Ben e	65535>	for the LACP. Note: The default value is
		32768.
configure	no lacp system-priority	This command configures the default for the
8		system priority for the LACP.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure
8		node.
interface	lacp port priority <1-	This command configures the priority for the
	65535>	specific port.
		Note: The default value is 32768.
interface	no lacp port priority	This command configures the default for the
		priority for the specific port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range configure
	gigabitethernet1/0/POR	node.
	TLISTS	
if-range	lacp port_priority <1-	This command configures the priority for the
	65535>	specific ports.
		Note: The default value is 32768.
if-range	no lacp port_priority	This command configures the default for the
		priority for the specific ports.

6.9.2.1. CLI Configurations

6.9.2.2. Web Configurations

	Link	Aggregation		
Static Trunk	LACP	LACP Info.		
LACP Settings				
State System Priority Group LACP Port Priority	Disable V 32768 Group 1 V Disable From: V To: V :			
LACP Group Status				
	Group ID 1 2 3		LACP State Disabled Disabled Disabled	
LACP Port Priority Sta	atus			
Port 1 3	Priority 32768 32768	Port 2 4	Priority 32768 32768	
5	32768	6	32768	

Parameter	Description
LACP Settings	
State	Select Enable from the drop down box to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). Select Disable to not use LACP.
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65,535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP "server". The LACP "server" controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group LACP	Select a trunk group ID and then select whether to Enable or Disable Group Link Aggregation Control Protocol for that trunk group.
Port Priority	Select a port or a range of ports to configure its (their) LACP priority.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.

6.9.3. LACP Information

6.9.3.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show lacp internal	This command displays the LACP internal
	[GROUP_ID]	information for the specific group or all
		groups.
enable	show lacp neighbor	This command displays the LACP neighbor's
	[GROUP_ID]	information for the specific group or all
		groups.

6.9.3.2. Web Configurations

LACP Info.	Info. 1
.pply	1
pply	1
	1
Mainhhana Infann	formation
Neighbors Inform	
Port	rt Age Port State Port Oper K
-	
-	· · · · · ·
Internal Informa	ormation
Admin Key	Oper Key Port State
	5 0x45
5	6 0x45
	5 6

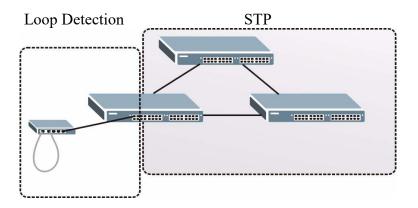
Parameter	Description
LACP Information	
Group ID	Select a LACP group that you want to view.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Neighbors Informat	tion
Port	The LACP member port ID.

System Priority	LACP system priority is used to determine link aggregation group (LAG) membership, and to identify this device to other switches during LAG negotiations. (Range: 0-65535; Default: 32768)
System ID	The neighbor Switch's system ID.
Port	The direct connected port Id of the neighbor Switch.
Age	The available time period of the neighbor Switch LACP information.
Port State	The direct connected port's state of the neighbor Switch.
Port Priority	The direct connected port's priority of the neighbor Switch.
Oper Key	The Oper key of the neighbor Switch.
Internal Informatio	n
Port	The LACP member port ID.
Port Priority	The port priority of the LACP member port.
Admin Key	The Admin key of the LACP member port.
Oper Key	The Oper key of the LACP member port.
Port State	The port state of the LACP member port.

6.10. Loop Detection

Loop detection is designed to handle loop problems on the edge of your network. This can occur when a port is connected to a Switch that is in a loop state. Loop state occurs as a result of human error. It happens when two ports on a switch are connected with the same cable. When a switch in loop state sends out broadcast messages the messages loop back to the switch and are re-broadcast again and again causing a broadcast storm.

The difference between the Loop Detection and STP:



The loop detection function sends probe packets periodically to detect if the port connect to a network in loop state. The Switch shuts down a port if the Switch detects that probe packets loop back to the same port of the Switch.

Loop Recovery:

When the loop detection is enabled, the Switch will send one probe packets every two seconds and then listen this packet. If it receives the packet at the same port, the Switch will disable this port. After the time period, *recovery time*, the Switch will enable this port and do loop detection again.

The Switch generates syslog, internal log messages as well as SNMP traps when it shuts down a port via the loop detection feature.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show loop-detection	This command displays the current loop
		detection configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	loop-detection (disable enable)	This command disables / enables the
		loop detection on the switch.
configure	loop-detection address	This command configures the
	MACADDR	destination MAC for the loop detection
		special packets.

6.10.1. CLI Configurations

configure	no loop-detection address	This command configures the
U	1	destination MAC to default
		(00:0b:04:AA:AA:AB).
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
interface	loop-detection (disable enable)	This command disables / enables the
		loop detection on the port.
interface	no shutdown	This command enables the port. It can
		unblock port blocked by loop detection.
interface	loop-detection recovery	This command enables / disables the
	(disable enable)	recovery function on the port.
interface	loop-detection recovery time	This command configures the recovery
	<1-60>	period time.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.
if-range	loop-detection (disable enable)	This command disables / enables the
		loop detection on the ports.
if-range	loop-detection recovery	This command enables / disables the
	(disable enable)	recovery function on the port.
if-range	loop-detection recovery time	This command configures the recovery
	<1-60>	period time.

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#loop-detection enable L2SWITCH(config)#interface 1/0/1 L2SWITCH(config-if)#loop-detection enable

6.10.2. Web Configurations

			Loop Detection			
oop Detec	tion Settings					
State)isable 🗸				
MAC Add		0:0b:04:aa:aa:ab				
	Port	State	Recov	very State	Recovery Time(min))
From:	1 🕶 To: 1 🕶	Disable	✓ Ena	able 🗸	1 (Range: 1-60))
			Apply Refresh			
.oop Detec Port	tion Status State	Status	Apply Refresh Manual Recovery	Recovery St	tate Recovery Time(r	nin)
		Status Normal		Recovery St		nin)
Port	State		Manual Recovery	-	1	nin)
Port 1	State Disabled	Normal	Manual Recovery	Enabled	1	nin)
Port 1 2	State Disabled Disabled	Normal	Manual Recovery Unblock Unblock	Enabled Enabled	1 1 1	nin)
Port 1 2 3	State Disabled Disabled Disabled	Normal Normal Normal	Manual Recovery Unblock Unblock Unblock	Enabled Enabled Enabled	1 1 1 1 1	nin)

Parameter	Description			
Loop Detection Settings				
State	Select this option to enable loop detection on the Switch.			
MAC Address	Enter the destination MAC address the probe packets will be sent to. If the port receives these same packets the port will be shut down.			
Port	Select a port on which to configure loop detection protection.			
State	Select Enable to use the loop detection feature on the Switch.			
Recovery State	Select Enable to reactivate the port automatically after the designated recovery time has passed.			
Recovery Time	Specify the recovery time in minutes that the Switch will wait before reactivating the port. This can be between 1 to 60 minutes.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			
Loop Detection Status				

Port	This field displays a port number.		
State	This field displays if the loop detection feature is enabled.		
Status	This field displays if the port is blocked.		
Manual Recovery	Clicks Unblock to reactivate the port immediately.		
Recovery State	This field displays if the loop recovery feature is enabled.		
Recovery Time (min)	This field displays the recovery time for the loop recovery feature.		

6.11. Modbus TCP

Modbus TCP supports different types of data format for reading. The primary four types of them are:

Data Access Type		Function	Function Name	Note
		Code		
Bit access	Physical Discrete	2	Read Discrete Inputs	Not support
	Inputs			now
	Internal Bits or	1	Read Coils	Not support
	Physical			now
	Coils			
Word access	Physical Input	4	Read Input Registers	
(16-bit Registers				
access)	Physical Output	3	Read Holding	Not support
	Registers		Registers	now

MODBUS Data Map and Information Interpretation of Tripp Lite IE Switches

MODBUS base address of Tripp Lite switches is 1001(decimal) for Function Code 4.

Address Offset	Data Type	Interpretation	Description			
System Information						
0x0000	1 word	HEX	Vendor ID = $0x0b04$			
0x0001	16 words	ASCII	Vendor Name = "Tripp Lite"			
			Word 0 Hi byte = 'T'			
			Word 0 Lo byte = 'r'			
			Word 1 Hi byte = 'i'			
			Word 1 Lo byte = 'p'			
			Word 2 Hi byte = 'p'			
			Word 2 Lo byte = ''			
			Word 3 Hi byte = 'L'			
			Word 3 Lo byte = 'i'			
			Word 4 Hi byte = 't'			
			Word 4 Lo byte = 'e'			
			Word 5 Hi byte = (0)			
			Word 5 Lo byte = (0)			
0x0020	16 words	ASCII	Product Name = "NGI-M04C2"			
			Word 0 Hi byte = 'N'			
			Word 0 Lo byte = 'G'			
			Word 1 Hi byte = 'I'			
			Word 1 Lo byte = '-'			
			Word 2 Hi byte = 'M'			
			Word 2 Lo byte = '0'			
			Word 3 Hi byte = '4'			
			Word 3 Lo byte = 'C'			
			Word 4 Hi byte = '2'			
			Word 4 Lo byte = $(0')$			
0x0040	7 words		Product Serial Number			
			Ex: Serial No=A000000000001			
0x0050	12 words	ASCII	Firmware Version="9015-000-1.0.0.S0"			
			Word 0 Hi byte = '9'			

			Word 0 Lo byte = '0'
			Word 1 Hi byte = '1'
			Word 1 Lo byte = 5
			Word 2 Hi byte = '-'
			Word 2 Lo byte = '0'
			Word 3 Hi byte = '0'
			Word 3 Lo byte = '0'
			Word 4 Hi byte = '-'
			Word 4 Lo byte = '1'
			Word 5 Hi byte = '.'
			Word 5 Lo byte = '0'
			Word 6 Hi byte = '.'
			Word 6 Lo byte = 0
			Word 7 Hi byte = '.'
			Word 7 Lo byte = 'S'
			Word 8 Hi byte = '0'
			Word 8 Lo byte = ' 0 '
0x0060	16 words	ASCII	Firmware Release Date="Mon Sep 30 18:51:45
			2013"
0x0070	3 words	HEX	Ethernet MAC Address
			Ex: MAC = 00-01-02-03-04-05
			Word 0 Hi byte = 0×00
			Word 0 Lo byte = 0×01
			Word 1 Hi byte = 0×02
			Word 1 Lo byte = 0×02
			Word 2 Hi byte = 0×04
			Word 2 Lo byte = 0×05
0x0080	1 word	HEX	Power 1(PWR) Alarm, DIP switch 1 need ON
0X0000	1 word	IILA	0x0000: no alarm
			0x00001: input voltage <44V
			0x0001: input voltage > 57V
			0x0002: hiput voltage > 57 v 0x0003: No PWR input
0x0081	1 word	HEX	Power 2(RPS) Alarm, DIP switch 1 need ON
0X0081	i wolu	ΠΕΛ	0x0000: no alarm
			0x00001: input voltage <44V
			1 0
			0x0002: input voltage > 57V
00000	1		0x0003: No RPS input
0x0090	1 word	HEX	Fault LED Status
			0x0000: No
D. II C			0x0001: Yes
Port Informati		HEV	
0x0100 to	1 word	HEX	Port 1 to 10Link Status
0x0109			0x0000: Link down
			0x0001: 10M-Full-FC_ON (FC: Flow Control)
			0x0002: 10M-Full-FC_OFF
			0x0003: 10M-Half-FC_ON
			0x0004: 10M-Half-FC_OFF
			0x0005: 100M-Full-FC_ON
			0x0006: 100M-Full-FC_OFF
			0x0007: 100M-Half-FC_ON
			0x0008: 100M-Half-FC_OFF
			0x0009: 1000M-Full-FC_ON
			0x000A: 1000M-Full-FC_OFF
			0x000B: 1000M-Half-FC ON

			0xFFFF: No port
0x0200 to	20 words	ASCII	Port 1 to 6 Description
0x0213 (port 1)	20		Port Description = "100TX,RJ45." Or
0x0220 to			"1000TX,SFP."
0x0223 (port 2)			Word 0 Hi byte = '1'
			Word 0 Lo byte = '0'
0x0320 to			Word 1 Hi byte = (0)
0x0320 to 0x0333 (port 6)			Word 1 Lo byte = G'
0x0355 (port 0)			word 1 Lo byte – 1
			Word 4 Hi byte = '4'
			Word 4 Lo byte = 5
			Word 5 Hi byte = '.'
			Word 5 Lo byte = (0)
0x0400 to	2 words	HEX	Port 1 to 6 Tx Packets
0x0400 to 0x0413 (port 1	2 words	IILA	Ex: port 1 Tx Packet Amount = $0x87654321$
to 6)			Word $0 = 8765$
10 0)			Word $1 = 4321$
0x0440 to	2 words	HEX	Port 1 to 6 Rx Packets
	2 words		
0x0453 (port 1	1		Ex: port 1 Rx Packet Amount = $0x123456$ Word $0 = 0012$
to 6)			
0-0400 /	2 1		Word $1 = 3456$
0x0480 to	2 words	HEX	Port 1 to 6 Tx Error Packets
0x0493 (port 1			Ex: port 1 Tx Error Packet Amount =
to 6)			0x87654321
			Word 0 =8765
			Word 1 = 4321
0x04C0 to	2 words	HEX	Port 1 to 6 Rx Error Packets
0x04D3 (port 1			Ex: port 1 Rx Error Packet Amount = $0x123456$
to 6)			Word $0 = 0012$
			Word 1 = 3456
STP Informatio		1	
0x0500	1 word	HEX	STP Status:
			0x0000 : STP is disabled.
			0x0001 : STP
			0x0002 : RSTP
			0x0003 : MSTP
Xpress Ring Inf		HEN	V D' Cut d'al tra
0x0501	1 word	HEX	Xpress Ring Status on the Switch:
			0x0000 : Disabled.
			0x0001 : Enabled
0x0510	1 word	HEX	Status of Xpress-ring1 of the Switch
			0x0000 : Disabled
			0x0001 : Enabled
0x0511	1 word	HEX	Status of Xpress-ring2 of the Switch
			0x0000 : Disabled
			0x0001 : Enabled
0x0512	3 word	HEX	Destination MAC of the Xpress-ring1
			Word 0 Lo byte = MAC0
			Word 0 Hi byte = MAC1
			Word 1Lo byte = MAC2
	1		Word 1 Hi byte = MAC3
			Word 2Lo byte = $MAC4$
			Word 2 Hi byte = MAC5
0.0515	3 word	HEX	Destination MAC of the Xpress-ring2
0X0515	5 word	$\Pi L \Lambda$	Destination MAC of the Abress-11122
0x0515	5 word	IILA	Word 0 Lo byte = $MAC0$

			$W_{\rm ev} = 0$ II: let $e = MAC1$
			Word 0 Hi byte = MAC1
			Word 1Lo byte = MAC2
			Word 1 Hi byte = $MAC3$
			Word 2Lo byte = $MAC4$
			Word 2 Hi byte = MAC5
0x0518	1 word	HEX	Primary Port of the Xpress-ring1
			Word 0 Hi byte = Port ID.
0x0519	1 word	HEX	Secondary Port of the Xpress-ring1
			Word 0 Hi byte = Port ID.
0x051a	1 word	HEX	Primary Port of the Xpress-ring2
			Word $\vec{0}$ Hi byte = Port ID.
0x051b	1 word	HEX	Secondary Port of the Xpress-ring2
			Word 0 Hi byte = Port ID.
0x051c	1 word	HEX	Role of Xpress-ring1
0110010	1		0×0000 : Forwarder
			0x0001 : Arbiter
0x051d	1 word	HEX	Role of Xpress-ring2
0.00010	1 word	11L/X	0x0000 : Forwarder
			0x0001 : Arbiter
0x051e	1 word	HEX	Primary Port Status of Xpress-ring1
0X051C	1 word	IILA	0x0000 : link down
			0x0000 : fink down 0x0001 : forwarding
			0x0002 : blocking
0x051f	1 word	HEX	Secondary Port Status of Xpress-ring1
0x0311	1 word	ПЕЛ	0x0000 : link down
			0x0001 : forwarding
			0x0002 : blocking
0x0520	1 word	HEX	Primary Port Status of Xpress-ring2
			0x0000 : link down
			0x0001 : forwarding
			0x0002 : blocking
0x0521	1 word	HEX	Secondary Port Status of Xpress-ring2
			0x0000 : link down
			0x0001 : forwarding
			0x0002 : blocking

6.11.1. CLI Configurations

Modbus TCP supports different types of data format for reading. The primary four CLI Configuration are:

Node	Command	Description
enable	show modbus-tcp	This command displays the current Modbus TCP
	state	configurations.
enable	show modbus-tcp	This command displays the range of the Modbus
	register-addr range	TCP registrations.
	NUMRANGE	Where NUMRANGE is the address range.
		Format is: nnnn-nnnn, start_addr-end_addr.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	modbus-tcp	This command disables / enables the Modbus TCP
	(disable enable)	on the switch.

6.11.2. Web Configurations

			Мо	dbus TCP
Nodbus T(CP Setting			
State Disable Connection : 0				
Modbus TC	P Information	-		
Downloa	d			
Read Input Registers (Function Code 04)				
Modbu	s Address	Length	Interpretation	Description
Dec	Hex	Word		
System Information				
1001	3e9	1	HEX	Vendor ID
1002	3ea	16	ASCII	Vendor Name
1033	409	16	ASCII	Product Name
1065	429	7	ASCII	Product Serial Number
1081	439	12	ASCII	Firmware Version
1097	449	16	ASCII	Firmware Release Date
1113	459	3	HEX	Ethernet MAC Address
1129	469	1	HEX	Power 1(PWR) Alarm, DIP switch 1 need ON
1130	46a	1	HEX	Power 2(RPS) Alarm, DIP switch 1 need ON
1145	479	1	HEX	Fault LED Status
			Port	Information
1257	4e9	1	HEX	Link Status of Port 1

Parameter	Description	
Modbus TCP Settings		
State	Select this option to enable / disable the Modbus on the Switch.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
Modbus TCP Information		
Download	Clicks the Download button to download all of the registers information to load host.	

6.12. STP / RSTP

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a Switch to interact with other (R)STP compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

The Switch supports Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) and Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) as defined in the following standards.

- IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allows faster convergence of the spanning tree than STP (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). In RSTP, topology change information is directly propagated throughout the network from the device that generates the topology change. In STP, a longer delay is required as the device that causes a topology change first notifies the root bridge and then the root bridge notifies the network. Both RSTP and STP flush unwanted learned addresses from the filtering database.

In STP, the port states are Blocking, Listening, Learning, Forwarding.

In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

Note: In this document, "STP" refers to both STP and RSTP.

STP Terminology

- The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree.
- Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. The recommended cost is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

- On each bridge, the bridge communicates with the root through the root port. The root port is the port on this Switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root-path cost). If there is no root port, then this Switch has been accepted as the root-bridge of the spanning tree network.
- For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

Forward Time (Forward Delay):

This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30seconds.

Max Age:

This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports(except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that age out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, anew root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.

Hello Time:

This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.

Path Cost:

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge, the slower the media, the higher the cost.

How STP Works?

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed. Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to reestablish a valid network topology.

802.1D STP

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) is a link layer network protocol that ensures a loop-free topology for any bridged LAN. It is based on an algorithm invented by Radia Perlman while working for Digital Equipment Corporation. In the OSI model for computer networking, STP falls under the OSI layer-2. Spanning tree allows a network design to include spare (redundant) links to provide automatic backup paths if an active link fails,

without the danger of bridge loops, or the need for manual enabling/disabling of these backup links. Bridge loops must be avoided because they result in flooding the network.

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) is defined in the IEEEStandard802.1D. As the name suggests, it creates a spanning tree within a mesh network of connected layer-2 bridges (typically Ethernet switches), and disables those links that are not part of the tree, leaving a single active path between any two network nodes.

STP switch port states

- Blocking A port that would cause a switching loop, no user data is sent or received but it may go into forwarding mode if the other links in use were to fail and the spanning tree algorithm determines the port may transition to the forwarding state. BPDU data is still received in blocking state.
- Listening The switch processes BPDUs and awaits possible new information that would cause it to return to the blocking state.
- Learning While the port does not yet forward frames (packets) it does learn source addresses from frames received and adds them to the filtering database (switching database)
- Forwarding A port receiving and sending data, normal operation. STP still monitors incoming BPDUs that would indicate it should return to the blocking state to prevent a loop.
- Disabled Not strictly part of STP, a network administrator can manually disable a port

802.1w RSTP

In 1998, the IEEE with document 802.1w introduced an evolution of the Spanning Tree Protocol: Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP), which provides for faster spanning tree convergence after a topology change. Standard IEEE 802.1D-2004 now incorporates RSTP and obsoletes STP. While STP can take 30 to 50 seconds to respond to a topology change, RSTP is typically able to respond to changes within a second.

RSTP bridge port roles:

- Root A forwarding port that is the best port from Non-root-bridge to Rootbridge
- Designated A forwarding port for every LAN segment
- Alternate An alternate path to the root bridge. This path is different than using the root port.
- Backup A backup/redundant path to a segment where another bridge port already connects.
- Disabled Not strictly part of STP, a network administrator can manually disable a port

Edge Port:

They are attached to a LAN that has no other bridges attached. These edge ports transition directly to the forwarding state. RSTP still continues to monitor the port for BPDUs in case a bridge is connected. RSTP can also be configured to automatically

detect edge ports. As soon as the bridge detects a BPDU coming to an edge port, the port becomes a non-edge port.

Forward Delay:

The range is from 4 to 30 seconds. This is the maximum time (in seconds) the root device will wait before changing states (i.e., listening to learning to forwarding).

Transmission Limit:

This is used to configure the minimum interval between the transmissions of consecutive RSTP BPDUs. This function can only be enabled in RSTP mode. The range is from 1 to 10 seconds.

Hello Time:

Set the time at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The range is from 1 to 10 seconds.

Bridge Priority:

Bridge priority is used in selecting the root device, root port, and designated port. The device with the highest priority becomes the STA root device. However, if all devices have the same priority, the device with the lowest MAC address will become the root device.

Port Priority:

Set the port priority in the switch. Low numeric value indicates a high priority. A port with lower priority is more likely to be blocked by STP if a network loop is detected. The valid value is from 0 to 240.

Path Cost:

The valid value is from 1 to 20000000. Higher cost paths are more likely to be blocked by STP if a network loop is detected.

BPDU Guard

This is a per port setting. If the port is enabled in BPDU guard and receive any BPDU, the port will be set to disable to avoid the error environments. User must enable the port by manual.

BPDU Filter

It is a feature to filter sending or receiving BPDUs on a switch port. If the port receives any BPDUs, the BPDUs will be dropped.

Notice:

If both of the BPDU filter and BPDU guard are enabled, the BPDU filter has the high priority.

Root Guard

The Root Guard feature forces an interface to become a designated port to prevent surrounding switches from becoming a root switch. In other words, Root Guard provides a way to enforce the root bridge placement in the network. The Root Guard feature prevents a Designated Port from becoming a Root Port. If a port on which the Root Guard feature receives a superior BPDU, it moves the port into a root-inconsistent state (effectively equal to a listening state), thus maintaining the current Root Bridge status. The port can be moved to forwarding state if no superior BPDU received by this port for three hello times.

6.12.1. General Settings 6.12.1.1. CLI Configurations

enableshow spanning-tree activeThis command displays the spanning tree information and active ports' information.enableshow spanning-tree blocked portsThis command displays the spanning tree information for only blocked port(s)enableshow spanning-tree summary port states and configurationsThis command displays the summary of port states and configurationsenableclear spanning-tree counters PORT IIDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT IIDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminal configure terminalThis command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree (disable forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configurespanning-tree algorithm-time forward-time TIMEThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & khello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- forward delay time (sec).This command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the default time.configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the default time.configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the default time.<		CLI Configurations	
enableinformation and active ports' information.enableshow spanning-tree blocked portsThis command displays the spanning tree information for only blocked port(s)enableshow spanning-tree summary opert states and configurationsThis command displays the summary of port states and configurationsenableclear spanning-tree counters PORT IIDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT IIDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminal configure terminalThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge time).configureno spanning-tree forward-time timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configure	Node	Command	Description
enableshow spanning-tree blocked portsThis command displays the spanning tree information for only blocked port(s)enableshow spanning-tree summary port states and configurationsThis command displays the summary of port states and configurationsenableclear spanning-tree counters PORT_IDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT_IDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminal configure terminalThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable spanning-tree algorithm-time TIME hello-time TIME timeThis command configures the bridge times(forward-telly, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm-time timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timerThis command configures the bridge forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the bridge forward telly time (sec).configurespanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the bridge forward-t	enable	show spanning-tree active	
portsinformation for only blocked port(s)enableshow spanning-tree summaryThis command displays the summary of port states and configurationsenableclear spanning-tree countersThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree countersThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT IDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminal configureThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable forward-time TIME max-age forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & time.configurespanning-tree forward-time spanning-tree forward-time.This command configures the bridge time).configurespanning-tree forward-time spanning-tree forward-time.This command configures the default values for forward-time & time.configurespanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the bridge hello time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge hello time. <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
enableshow spanning-tree summary opert states and configurationsThis command displays the summary of port states and configurationsenableclear spanning-tree counters PORT_IDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT_IDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminal configure terminalThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the bridge hello time (sec).	enable	show spanning-tree blocked	This command displays the spanning tree
enableclear spanning-tree countersport states and configurationsenableclear spanning-tree countersThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree countersThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminalThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configureno spanning-tree forward-time This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the default values for forward-time.		ports	information for only blocked port(s)
enableclear spanning-tree countersThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree countersThis command clears spanning-treePORT_IDstatistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminalThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configureno spanning-tree forward-time forward-timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward-time timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward-time forward delay time (sec).This command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.	enable	show spanning-tree summary	This command displays the summary of
enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT_IDStatistics for all ports.enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT_IDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminalThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time (4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.			port states and configurations
enableclear spanning-tree counters PORT_IDThis command clears spanning-tree statistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminalThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time This command configures the bridge times(configureno spanning-tree forward-time This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time & forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.	enable	clear spanning-tree counters	This command clears spanning-tree
PORT_IDstatistics for a specific port.enableconfigure terminalThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the bridge time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time < 4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).			statistics for all ports.
enableconfigure terminalThis command changes the node to configure node.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the bridge hello time (sec).	enable	clear spanning-tree counters	This command clears spanning-tree
configurespanning-tree (disable enable)Configure inde.configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time < <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the default time (sec).		PORT_ID	statistics for a specific port.
configurespanning-tree (disable enable)This command disables / enables the spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time & max-age & hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time (4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree forward-time (4-30>This command configures the default values for forward delay time (sec).configurespanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the default time (sec).configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).	enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
enable)spanning tree function for the system.configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time 			
configurespanning-tree algorithm-timer forward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEThis command configures the bridge times(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default	configure	spanning-tree (disable	This command disables / enables the
InstructionInstructionInstructionforward-time TIME max-age TIME hello-time TIMEtimes(forward-delay, max-age, hello- time).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the default time (sec).		enable)	spanning tree function for the system.
TIME hello-time TIMEtime).configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the default	configure	spanning-tree algorithm-timer	This command configures the bridge
configureno spanning-tree algorithm- timerThis command configures the default values for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- time (sec).This command configures the default	_	forward-time TIME max-age	times(forward-delay, max-age, hello-
timervalues for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- time (sec).This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).		TIME hello-time TIME	time).
timervalues for forward-time &max-age &hello-time.configurespanning-tree forward-time <4-30>This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- time (sec).This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).	configure	no spanning-tree algorithm-	This command configures the default
configurespanning-tree forward-time $<4-30>$ This command configures the bridge forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- $10>$ This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-time <1- $10>$ This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default	-		values for forward-time &max-age
<4-30>forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default			&hello-time.
<4-30>forward delay time (sec).configureno spanning-tree forward- timeThis command configures the default values for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default	configure	spanning-tree forward-time	This command configures the bridge
timevalues for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default	-		
timevalues for forward-time.configurespanning-tree hello-time <1- 10>This command configures the bridge hello time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default	configure	no spanning-tree forward-	This command configures the default
10>time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default	_	time	values for forward-time.
10>time (sec).configureno spanning-tree hello-timeThis command configures the default	configure	spanning-tree hello-time <1-	This command configures the bridge hello
	-		
	configure	no spanning-tree hello-time	This command configures the default
values for herio time.	-		values for hello-time.
configure spanning-tree max-age <6- This command configures the bridge	configure	spanning-tree max-age <6-	This command configures the bridge
40> message max-age time (sec).	-		message max-age time (sec).
configure no spanning-tree max-age This command configures the default	configure	no spanning-tree max-age	This command configures the default
values for max-age time.	_		
configure spanning-tree mode (rstp stp) This command configures the spanning	configure	spanning-tree mode (rstp stp)	This command configures the spanning
mode.	-		mode.
configure spanning-tree path-cost This command configures the path-cost	configure	spanning-tree path-cost	This command configures the path-cost
method (short long) method.			
configure spanning-tree priority <0- This command configures the priority for	configure	spanning-tree priority <0-	This command configures the priority for
61440> the system.	_		
configure no spanning-tree priority This command configures the default	configure	no spanning-tree priority	This command configures the default
values for the system priority.	_		

	Spanni	ing Tree Protocol
General Settings	Port Parameters	STP Status
STP Settings		
State Mode	Disable V RSTP V	
STP Parameter Settings		
Forward Delay (sec) Max Age (sec) Hello Time (sec) Priority Pathcost Method	15 (4~30) 20 (6~40) 2 (1~10) 32768 (0~61440) Short ▼	Relationships: 2*(Forward Delay-1) >= Max Age Max Age >= 2*(Hello Time+1)
	Ar	pply Refresh

6.12.1.2. Web Configurations

Parameter Description

STP Settings

State	Select Enabled to use Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) or Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP).
Mode	Select to use either Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) or Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP).

STP Parameter Settings

	5
Forward Time	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds.
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that age out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.

Priority	 Priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Enter a value from 0~61440. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines the Root Hello Time, Root Maximum Age and Root Forwarding Delay.
Pathcost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.12.2. Port Parameters 6.12.2.1.CLI Configurations

	Description
show spanning-tree blocked	This command displays the spanning
ports	tree information for only blocked port(s)
show spanning-tree port detail	This command displays the spanning
PORT_ID	tree information for the interface port.
configure terminal	This command changes the node to
	configure node.
interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
	configure node.
spanning-tree (disable enable)	This command configures
	enables/disables the STP function for the
	specific port.
spanning-tree bpdufilter	This command configures
(disable enable)	enables/disables the bpdu filter function
	for the specific port.
spanning-tree bpduguard	This command configures
(disable enable)	enables/disables the bpdu guard function
	for the specific port.
spanning-tree rootguard	This command enables/disables the
(disable enable)	BPDU Root guard port setting for the
	specific port.
spanning-tree edge-port	This command enables/disables the edge
(disable enable)	port setting for the specific port.
spanning-tree cost VALUE	This command configures the cost for
	the specific port.
	Command show spanning-tree blocked ports show spanning-tree port detail PORT_ID configure terminal interface IFNAME spanning-tree (disable enable) spanning-tree bpdufilter (disable enable) spanning-tree rootguard (disable enable) spanning-tree edge-port (disable enable)

		Cost range
		Cost range:
		16-bit based value range 1-65535,
	·	32-bit based value range 1-200000000.
interface	no spanning-tree cost	This command configures the path cost
		to default for the specific port.
interface	spanning-tree port-priority <0-	This command configures the port
	240>	priority for the specific port.
		Default: 128.
interface	no spanning-tree port-priority	This command configures the port
		priority to default for the specific port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.
if-range	spanning-tree(disable enable)	This command configures
-		enables/disables the STP function for the
		specific port.
if-range	spanning-tree bpdufilter	This command configures
C	(disable enable)	enables/disables the bpdu filter function
		for the specific port.
if-range	spanning-tree bpduguard	This command configures
U	(disable enable)	enables/disables the bpdu guard function
		for the specific port.
if-range	spanning-tree rootguard	This command enables/disables the
U	(disable enable)	BPDU Root guard port setting for the
		specific port.
if-range	spanning-tree edge-port	This command enables/disables the edge
U	(disable enable)	port setting for the specific port.
if-range	spanning-tree cost VALUE	This command configures the cost for
U	1 0	the specific port.
		Cost range:
		16-bit based value range 1-65535,
		32-bit based value range 1-200000000.
if-range	no spanning-tree cost	This command configures the path cost
-0-		to default for the specific port.
if-range	spanning-tree port-priority <0-	This command configures the port
8-	240>	priority for the specific port.
		Default: 128.
if-range	no spanning-tree port-priority	This command configures the port
	and spanning are port priority	priority to default for the specific port.
	l	Priority to default for the specific polt.

	Spanning Tree Protocol								
				Spanning	g free Pro	00001			
Gon	General Settings Port Parameters STP Status								
Gen	erar settings		JILFalameters	3	IF Status				
STP F	STP Port Settings								
	Port Active Path Cost Priority Edge Port BPDU Filter BPDU Guard ROOT Guard								
Fro	om: 1 🕶 To:	1~	Enable 🗸	250	128	Disable 🗸	Disable 🗸	Disable 🗸	Disable 🗸
				Apply	Refresh]			
STP F	Port Status								
Port	t Active	Role	Status	Path Cost	Priority	Edge Port	BPDU Filter	BPDU Guard	ROOT Guard
1	Enabled	None	Discarding	250	128	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
2	Enabled	None	Discarding	250	128	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
3	Enabled	Mana	Discoulters	250	128	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
2	Litableu	None	Discarding	200	120	Disabica	District	Diodolog	Disabled
4	Enabled	None	Discarding	250	128	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
			0						
4	Enabled	None	Discarding	250	128	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled

6.12.2.2. Web Configurations

Parameter	Description			
Port Parameters Settings				
Port	Selects a port that you want to configure.			
Active	Enables/Disables the spanning tree function for the specific port.			
Path Cost	Configures the path cost for the specific port.			
Priority	Configures the priority for the specific port.			
Edge Port	Configures the port type for the specific port. Edge or Non-Edge.			
BPDU Filter	Enables/Disables the BPDU filter function for the specific port.			
BPDU Guard	Enables/Disables the BPDU guard function for the specific port.			
ROOT Guard	Enables/Disables the BPDU root guard function for the specific port.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			
Port Status				
Active	The state of the STP function.			

Role	The port role. Should be one of the Alternated / Designated / Root / Backup / None.	
Status	The port's status. Should be one of the Discarding / Blocking / Listening / Learning / Forwarding / Disabled.	
Path Cost	The port's path cost.	
Priority	The port's priority.	
Edge Port	The state of the edge function.	
BPDU Filter	The state of the BPDU filter function.	
BPDU Guard	The state of the BPDU guard function.	
ROOT Guard	The state of the BPDU Root guard function.	

6.12.3. STP Status 6.12.3.1.CLI Configurations

011210111	on internet i comparations					
Node	Command	Description				
enable	show spanning-tree active	This command displays the spanning tree information and active ports' information.				

6.12.3.2. Web Configurations

Spanning Tree Protocol							
General Settings Port Parameters STP Status							
Current Root Status	Current Root Status						
MAC Address	Priori	ty	Max Age	Hello Tim	e Forv	ward Delay	
00:0b:04:00:00:06	3276	8	20	2		15	
Current Bridge Status	Current Bridge Status						
MAC Address	Priority	Max A	ge Hello Time	Forward Delay	Path Cost	Root Port	
00:0b:04:00:00:06	32768	20	2	15	0	0	
Refresh							

Parameter	Description			
Current Root Status				
MAC address	This is the MAC address of the root bridge.			
Priority	Root refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). This field displays the root bridge's priority. This Switch may also be the root bridge.			
MAX Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.			
Hello Time	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.			
Forward Delay	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			
Current Bridge Status				
MAC address	This is the MAC address of the current bridge.			

Priority	Priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines the Root Hello Time, Root Maximum Age and Root Forwarding Delay.
MAX Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that age out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch.
Forward Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost.
Root Cost	This is the number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.

7. Security

7.1. IP Source Guard

IP Source Guard is a security feature that restricts IP traffic on un-trusted Layer 2 ports by filtering traffic based on the DHCP snooping binding database or manually configured IP source bindings. This feature helps prevent IP spoofing attacks when a host tries to spoof and use the IP address of another host. Any IP traffic coming into the interface with a source IP address other than that assigned (via DHCP or static configuration) will be filtered out on the un-trusted Layer 2 ports.

The IP Source Guard feature is enabled in combination with the DHCP snooping feature on un-trusted Layer 2 interfaces. It builds and maintains an IP source binding table that is learned by DHCP snooping or manually configured (static IP source bindings). An entry in the IP source binding table contains the IP address and the associated MAC and VLAN numbers. The IP Source Guard is supported on Layer 2 ports only, including access and trunk ports.

The IP Source Guard features include below functions:

- 1. DHCP Snooping.
- 2. DHCP Binding table.
- 3. ARP Inspection.
- 4. Blacklist Filter. (arp-inspection mac-filter table)

7.1.1. DHCP Snooping

DHCP snooping is a DHCP security feature that provides network security by filtering untrusted DHCP messages and by building and maintaining a DHCP snooping binding database, which is also referred to as a DHCP snooping binding table.

DHCP snooping acts like a firewall between un-trusted hosts and DHCP servers. You can use DHCP snooping to differentiate between un-trusted interfaces connected to the end user and trusted interfaces connected to the DHCP server or another switch.

The DHCP snooping binding database contains the MAC address, the IP address, the lease time, the binding type, the VLAN number, and the interface information that corresponds to the local un-trusted interfaces of a switch.

When a switch receives a packet on an un-trusted interface and the interface belongs to a VLAN in which DHCP snooping is enabled, the switch compares the source MAC address and the DHCP client hardware address. If addresses match (the default), the switch forwards the packet. If the addresses do not match, the switch drops the packet.

The switch drops a DHCP packet when one of these situations occurs:

✓ A packet from a DHCP server, such as a DHCPOFFER, DHCPACK, DHCPNAK, or DHCPLEASEQUERY packet, is received from the un-trusted port.

✓ A packet is received on an un-trusted interface, and the source MAC address and the DHCP client hardware address do not match any of the current bindings.

Use DHCP snooping to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically. This can prevent clients from getting IP addresses from unauthorized DHCP servers.

Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an un-trusted port for DHCP snooping. This setting is independent of the trusted/un-trusted setting for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or un-trusted) can receive each second.

Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches. The Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. The Switch learns dynamic bindings from trusted ports.

Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers. The Switch discards DHCP packets from un-trusted ports in the following situations:

- The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK).
- The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings.
- The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.

DHCP Snooping Database

The Switch stores the binding table in volatile memory. If the Switch restarts, it loads static bindings from permanent memory but loses the dynamic bindings, in which case the devices in the network have to send DHCP requests again.

Configuring DHCP Snooping

Follow these steps to configure DHCP snooping on the Switch.

- 1. Enable DHCP snooping on the Switch.
- 2. Enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN.
- 3. Configure trusted and un-trusted ports.
- 4. Configure static bindings.

Notes:

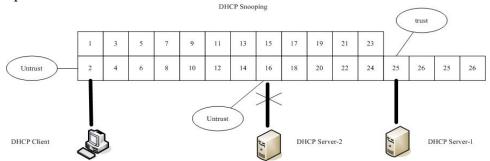
The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

If the port link down, the entries learned by this port in the DHCP snooping binding table will be deleted.

You must enable the global DHCP snooping and DHCP Snooping for vlan first.

The main purposes of the DHCP Snooping are:

- 1. Create and maintain binding table for ARP Inspection function.
- 2. Filter the DHCP server's packets that the DHCP server connects to an un-trusted port.



The DHCP server connected to an un-trusted port will be filtered.

Notices:

There are a global state and per VLAN states.

When the global state is disabled, the DHCP Snooping on the Switch is disabled even per VLAN states are enabled.

When the global state is enabled, user must enable per VLAN states to enable the DHCP Snooping on the specific VLAN.

VLAN 1	: port 1-4.
DHCP Client-1	: connect to port 3.
DHCP Server	: connect to port 1.

Procedures:

- 1. Default environments:
 - A. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /release
 - B. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /renew

 \rightarrow DHCP Client-1 can get an IP address.

- 2. Enable the global DHCP Snooping.
 - A. L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping
 - B. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /release
 - C. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /renew
 - \rightarrow DHCP Client-1 can get an IP address.
- 3. Enable the global DHCP Snooping and VLAN 1 DHCP Snooping.
 - A. L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping
 - B. L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping vlan 1
 - C. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /release
 - D. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /renew
 - \rightarrow DHCP Client-1 cannot get an IP address.
 - ; Because the DHCP server connects to a un-trust port.

- 4. Enable the global DHCP Snooping and VLAN 1 DHCP Snooping.
 - A. L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping
 - B. L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping vlan 1
 - C. L2SWITCH(config)#interface gi1/0/1
 - D. L2SWITCH(config-if)#dhcp-snooping trust
 - E. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /release
 - F. DHCP Client-1: ipconfig /renew
 - \rightarrow DHCP Client-1 can get an IP address.
- 5. If you configure a static host entry in the DHCP snooping binding table, and then you want to change the host to DHCP client, the host will not get a new IP from DHCP server, and then you must delete the static host entry first.

7.1.1.1.1 CLI Configurations				
Node	Command	Description		
enable	show dhcp-snooping	This command displays the current		
		DHCP snooping configurations.		
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to		
		configure node.		
configure	dhcp-snooping	This command disables/enables the		
_	(disable enable)	DHCP snooping on the switch.		
configure	dhcp-snooping vlan	This command enables the DHCP		
	VLANLISTS	snooping function on a VLAN or range		
		of VLANs.		
configure	no dhcp-snooping vlan	This command disables the DHCP		
	VLANLISTS	snooping function on a VLAN or range		
		of VLANs.		

7.1.1.1. DHCP Snooping

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping enable L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping vlan 1

7.1.1.1.2. Web Configurations

	DHCP Snooping				
DH	ICP Snooping	Port Settings	Server Screening		
DHC	CP Snooping Settings				
	State /LAN State	State Add Add Apply Refresh			
DHC	DHCP Snooping Status				
	DHCP Snooping State		Disabled		
	Enabled on VLAN		None		

Parameter	Description				
DHCP Snooping Set	HCP Snooping Settings				
State	Select Enable to use DHCP snooping on the Switch. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on specific VLANs and specify trusted ports. Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports. Select Disable to not use DHCP snooping.				
VLAN State	Select Add and enter the VLAN IDs you want the Switch to enable DHCP snooping on. You can designate multiple VLANs individually by using a comma (,) and by range with a hyphen (-). Select Delete and enter the VLAN IDs you no longer want the Switch to use DHCP snooping on.				
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.				
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.				
DHCP Snooping Sta	tus				
DHCP Snooping State	This field displays the current status of the DHCP snoopingfeature, Enabled or Disabled .				
Enabled on VLAN	This field displays the VLAN IDs that have DHCP snooping enabled on them. This will display None if no VLANs have been set.				

7.1.1.2. Port Settings 7.1.1.2.1. CLI Configurations

7.1.1.2.1. CLI Configurations					
Node	Command	Description			
enable	show dhcp-snooping	This command displays the current			
		DHCP snooping configurations.			
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to			
		configure node.			
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface			
		configure node.			
interface	dhcp-snooping host count	This command configures the maximum			
	<1-32>	host count for the specific port.			
interface	no dhcp-snooping host count	This command configures the maximum			
		host count to default for the specific			
		port.			
		The default host count is 32.			
interface	dhcp-snooping trust	This command configures the trust port			
		for the specific port.			
interface	no dhcp-snooping trust	This command configures the un-trust			
		port for the specific port.			
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range			
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.			
if-range	dhcp-snooping host count <1-	This command configures the maximum			
	32>	host count for the specific ports.			
if-range	no dhcp-snooping host count	This command configures the maximum			
-		host count to default for the specific			
		ports.			
		The default host count is 32.			
if-range	dhcp-snooping trust	This command configures the trust port			
-		for the specific ports.			
if-range	no dhep-snooping trust	This command configures the un-trust			
-		port for the specific ports.			
		·			

8						
DHCP Snooping						
DHCP Sno	DHCP Snooping Port Settings Server Screening					
Port Setting	ıs					
Port From: 1 v To: 1 v Trust No v Maximum Host Count 32 (Range: 1-32) Apply Refresh						
Port Status						
Port	Trusted	Maximum Host Count	Port	Trusted	Maximum Host Count	
1	NO	32	2	NO	32	
3	NO	32	4	NO	32	
5	NO	32	6	NO	32	

7.1.1.2.2. Web Configurations

Parameter	Description		
Port Settings			
Port	Select a port number to modify its configurations.		
Trust	Configures the specific port if it is a trust port.		
Maximum Host Count	Enter the maximum number of hosts (1-32) that are permitted to simultaneously connect to a port.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

7.1.1.3. Server Screening

The Switch supports DHCP Server Screening, a feature that denies access to rogue DHCP servers. That is, when one or more DHCP servers are present on the network and both provide DHCP services to different distinct groups of clients, the valid DHCP server's packets will be passed to the client.

If you want to enable this feature, you must enable the DHCP Snooping function first. The Switch allows users to configure up to three valid DHCP servers.

If no DHCP servers are configured, it means all DHCP server are valid.

Node	Command	Description		
noue	Commanu	Description		
enable	show dhcp-snooping	This command displays the valid DHCP		
	server	server IP.		
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure		
		node.		
configure	dhcp-snooping server	This command configures a valid DHCP		
	IPADDR	server's IP.		
configure	no dhcp-snooping server	This command removes a valid DHCP		
	IPADDR	server's IP.		

7.1.1.3.1. CLI Configurations

7.1.1.3.2. Web Configurations

	DHCP Snoopin	g
DHCP Snooping	Port Settings Server Screenin	9
Server Screening	Setting	
DHCP Server	P Apply Refresh	
Server Screening	List	
No.	IP Address	Action
1	192.168.202.1	Delete

ParameterDescriptionServer Screening Settings

DHCP Server IP	This field configures the valid DHCP server's IP address.	
Apply	Click Apply to configure the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
Server Screening List		

No.	This field displays the index number of the DHCP server entry. Click the number to modify the entry.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the DHCP server.
Action	Click Delete to remove a configured DHCP server.

7.1.2. Binding Table

The DHCP Snooping binding table records the host information learned by DHCP snooping function (dynamic) or set by user (static). The ARP inspection will use this table to forward or drop the ARP packets. If the ARP packets sent by invalid host, they will be dropped. If the Lease time is expired, the entry will be removed from the table.

Static bindings are uniquely identified by the MAC address and VLAN ID. Each MAC address and VLAN ID can only be in one static binding. If you try to create a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID as an existing static binding, the new static binding replaces the original one.

Command	
Commanu	Description
show dhcp-snooping binding	This command displays the current
	DHCP snooping binding table.
configure terminal	This command changes the node to
	configure node.
dhcp-snooping binding mac	This command configures a static host
MAC_ADDR ip IP_ADDR	into the DHCP snooping binding table.
vlan <1-4094> port PORT_NO	
no dhcp-snooping binding mac	This command removes a static host
MACADDR	from the DHCP snooping binding table.
(]]	show dhep-snooping binding configure terminal dhep-snooping binding mac MAC_ADDR ip IP_ADDR vlan <1-4094> port PORT_NO no dhep-snooping binding mac

7.1.2.1. Static Entry 1111 CIIC

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal

L2SWITCH(config)#dhcp-snooping binding mac 00:11:22:33:44:55 ip 1.1.1.1 vlan 1 port2

L2SWITCH(config)#no dhcp-snooping binding mac 00:11:22:33:44:55

L2SWITCH#show dhcp-snooping binding

7.1.2.1.2. Web Configurations

DHCP Snooping Binding Table							
Sta	atic Entry	Binding Table					
Static	Entry Settings						
IP /	AC Address Address AN ID rt	1 V	ply Refresh				
Static Binding Table							
No.	MAC Address	IP Address	Lease(hour)	VLAN	Port	Туре	Action
1	00:0b:04:11:22:33	192.168.202.111	0	1	1	Static	Delete

Parameter	Description		
Static Entry Settings	S		
MAC Address	Enter the source MAC address in the binding.		
IP Address	Enter the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.		
VLAN ID	Enter the source VLAN ID in the binding.		
Port	Specify the port in the binding.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			
Static Binding Table			
No.	This field displays a sequential number for each binding. Click it to update an existing entry.		
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.		
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.		
Lease (Hour)	This field displays how long the binding is valid.		
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.		
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding.		

Туре	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. Static : This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator. Dynamic : This binding was learned by snooping DHCP packets.
Action	Click Delete to remove the specified entry.

7.1.2.2. Binding Table

Bindings are used by DHCP snooping and ARP inspection to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized packets in the network. The Switch learns the dynamic bindings by snooping DHCP packets and from information provided manually in the **Static Entry Settings** screen.

7.1.2.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show dhep-snooping binding	This command displays the current
		DHCP snooping binding table.

7.1.2.2.2. Web Configurations

	DHCP Snooping Binding Table						
Sta	Static Entry Binding Table						
DHCF	DHCP Snooping Binding Table						
Show Type All Show *You can select the dynamic entry and convert it to static status.							
*All MAC Address IP Address Lease(hour) VLAN Port Type							
	00:0b:04:11:22:33 192.168.202.111 0 1 1 Static						
	Apply Refresh						

Parameter	Description		
DHCP Snooping Binding Table			
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.		
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.		
Lease	This field displays how long the binding is valid.		
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.		

Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.	
Туре	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding.Static: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator.Dynamic: This binding was learned by snooping DHCP packets.	
Apply	Click Apply to configure the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

7.1.3. ARP Inspection

Dynamic ARP inspection is a security feature which validates ARP packet in a network by performing IP to MAC address binding inspection. Those will be stored in a trusted database (the DHCP snooping database) before forwarding. Dynamic ARP intercepts, logs, and discards ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings. This capability protects the network from certain man-in-the-middle attacks.

Dynamic ARP inspection ensures that only valid ARP requests and responses are relayed. The switch performs these activities:

- Intercepts all ARP requests and responses on untrusted ports.
- Verifies that each of these intercepted packets has a valid IP-to-MAC address binding before it updates the local ARP cache or before it forwards the packet to the appropriate destination.

Trusted and untrusted port

- This setting is independent of the trusted and untrusted setting of the DHCP Snooping.
- The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reasons.
- The Switch discards ARP packets on un-trusted ports if the sender's information in the ARP packets does not match any of the current bindings.
- Normally, the trusted ports are the uplink port and the untrusted ports are connected to subscribers.

Configurations:

Users can enable/disable the ARP Inspection on the Switch. Users also can enable/disable the ARP Inspection on a specific VLAN. If the ARP Inspection on the Switch is disabled, the ARP Inspection is disabled on all VLANs even some of the VLAN ARP Inspection are enabled.

Notices

There are a global state and per VLAN states.

✓ When the global state is disabled, the ARP Inspection on the Switch is disabled even per VLAN states are enabled. ✓ When the global state is enabled, user must enable per VLAN states to enable the ARP Inspection on the specific VLAN.

	CLI Configurations	
Node	Command	Description
enable	show arp-inspection	This command displays the current ARP
		Inspection configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	arp-inspection	This command disables/enables the ARP
	(disable enable)	Inspection function on the switch.
configure	arp-inspection vlan	This command enables the ARP Inspection
	VLANLISTS	function on a VLAN or range of VLANs.
configure	no arp-inspection	This command disables the ARP Inspection
	vlan VLANLISTS	function on a VLAN or range of VLANs.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure node.
interface	arp-inspection trust	This command configures the trust port for the
		specific port.
interface	no arp-inspection	This command configures the un-trust port for the
	trust	specific port.

7.1.3.1. ARP Inspection

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#arp-inspection enable L2SWITCH(config)#arp-inspection vlan 1 L2SWITCH(config)#interface 1/0/1 L2SWITCH(config-if)#arp-inspection trust

7.1.3.1.2. Web Configurations

		ARP Inspection		
A	RP Inspection Filter Table			
ARI	P Inspection Settings			
,	State Disable ✓ VLAN State Add ✓ Trusted Ports ○ Select All ODeselect All			
		Apply Refresh		
ARI	ARP Inspection Status			
	ARP Inspection State Enabled on VLAN	Disabled None		
	Trusted Ports	None		

Parameter	Description			
ARP Inspection Settings				
State	Use this to Enable or Disable ARP inspection on the Switch.			
VLAN State	Enter the VLAN IDs you want the Switch to enable ARP Inspection for. You can designate multiple VLANs individually by using a comma (,) and by range with a hyphen (-).			
Trusted Ports	 Select the ports which are trusted and deselect the ports which are un-trusted. The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason. The Switch discards ARP packets on un-trusted ports in the following situations: The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings. The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high. You can specify the maximum rate at which ARP packets can arrive on untrusted ports. 			
Select All	Click this to set all ports to trusted.			
Deselect All	Click this to set all ports to un-trusted.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			

Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			
ARP Inspection Status				
ARP Inspection State	This field displays the current status of the ARP Inspection feature, Enabled or Disabled .			
Enabled on VLAN	This field displays the VLAN IDs that have ARP Inspection enabled on them. This will display None if no VLANs have been set.			
Trusted Ports	This field displays the ports which are trusted. This will display None if no ports are trusted.			

7.1.3.2. Filter Table

Dynamic ARP inspections validates the packet by performing IP to MAC address binding inspection stored in a trusted database (the DHCP snooping database) before forwarding the packet. When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. The switch also periodically deletes entries if the age-time for the entry is expired.

- If the ARP Inspection is enabled and the system detects invalid hosts, the system will create a filtered entry in the MAC address table.
- When Port link down and ARP Inspection was disabled, Switch will remove the MAC-filter entries learned by this port.
- When Port link down and ARP Inspection was enabled, Switch will remove the MACfilter entries learned by this port.
- The maximum entry of the MAC address filter table is 256.
- When MAC address filter table of ARP Inspection is full, the Switch receives unauthorized ARP packet, and it automatically creates a SYSLOG and drop this ARP packet. The SYSLOG event happens on the first time.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show arp-inspection	This command displays the current ARP
	mac-filter	Inspection filtered MAC.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	arp-inspection mac-	This command configures the age time for the
	filter age <1-10080>	ARP inspection MAC filter entry.
configure	clear arp-inspection	This command clears all of entries in the filter
	mac-filter	table.
configure	no arp-inspection	This command removes an entry from the ARP
	mac-filter mac	inspection MAC filter table.
	MACADDR vlan <1-	
	4094>	

7.1.3.2.1. CLI Configurations

7.1.3.2.2. Web Configurations

ARP Inspection					
ARP Inspection	Filter Table				
Filter Age Time Setti	ngs				
Filter Age Time	5 minutes	(Range: 1-1008	0)		
Apply Refresh					
Filter Table	Filter Table				
No. MAC Address VLAN Port Expiry(min) Action					
NO.	MAC Address	VLAN	TOR		: 0 record(s)

Parameter	Description			
Filter Age Time Settings				
Filter Age TimeThis setting has no effect on existing MAC address filter Enter how long (1-10080 minutes) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch after the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet. The Switch automatically dele MAC address filter afterwards.				
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			
Filter Table				
No.	This field displays a sequential number for each MAC addressfilter.			
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the MAC addressfilter.			
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the MAC address filter.			
Port	This field displays the source port of the discarded ARP packet.			
Expiry (min)	This field displays how long (in minutes) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch.			
Action	Click Delete to remove the record manually.			
Total	This field displays the current number of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified unauthorized ARP packets.			

7.2. Access Control List

Access control list (ACL) is a list of permissions attached to an object. The list specifies who or what is allowed to access the object and what operations are allowed to be performed on the object.

ACL function allows user to configure a few rules to reject packets from the specific ingress ports or all ports. These rules will check the packets' source MAC address and destination MAC address. If packets match these rules, the system will do the actions "deny". "deny" means rejecting these packets.

The Action Resolution engine collects the information (action and metering results) from the hit entries: if more than one rule matches, the actions and meter/counters are taken from the policy associated with the matched rule with highest priority.

L2 ACL Support:

- 1. Filter a specific source MAC address. Command: *source mac host MACADDR*
- Filter a specific destination MAC address. Command: *destination mac host MACADDR*
- 3. Filter a range of source MAC address. Command: *source mac MACADDR MACADDR* The second MACADDR is a mask, for example: ffff.ffff.0000
- 4. Filter a range of destination MAC address. Command: *destination mac MACADDR MACADDR* The second MACADDR is a mask, for example: ffff.ffff.0000

L3 ACL Support:

- 1. Filter a specific source IP address. Command: *source ip host IPADDR*
- 2. Filter a specific destination IP address. Command: *destination ip host IPADDR*
- 3. Filter a range of source IP address. Command: *source ip IPADDR IPADDR* The second IPADDR is a mask, for example: 255.255.0.0
- 4. Filter a range of destination IP address. Command: *destination ip IPADDR IPADDR*

L4 ACL Support:

- 1. Filter a UDP/TCP source port.
- 2. Filter a UDP/TCP destination port.

Notices:

- Maximum profile : 64.
- Maximum profile name length : 16.

• The ACL name should be the combination of the digit or the alphabet.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show access-list	This command displays all of the access control
enuore		profiles.
configure	access-list STRING	This command creates a new access control
_		profile.
		Where the STRING is the profile name.
configure	no access-list STRING	This command deletes an access control profile.
acl	show	This command displays the current access control profile.
acl	action	This command actives this profile.
	(disable drop permit)	disable – disable the profile.
		drop – If packets match the profile, the packets
		will be dropped. permit – If packets match the profile, the packets
		will be forwarded.
acl	destination mac host	This command configures the destination MAC
uei	MACADDR	and mask for the profile.
acl	destination mac	This command configures the destination MAC
	MACADDR	and mask for the profile.
	MACADDR	1
acl	destination mac	This command configures the destination MAC
	MACADDR	and mask for the profile. The second MACADDR
	MACADDR	parameter is the mask for the profile.
acl	no destination mac	This command removes the destination MAC
		from the profile.
acl	ethertype STRING	This command configures the ether type for the
		profile. Where the STRING is a hex-decimal
		value. e.g.: 08AA.
acl	no ethertype	This command removes the limitation of the ether
	1	type from the profile.
acl	source mac host	This command configures the source MAC and
1	MACADDR	mask for the profile.
acl	source mac	This command configures the source AMC and
	MACADDR	mask for the profile.
<u>aal</u>	MACADDR	This command removes the source MAC and
acl	no source mac	
acl	source in host	mask from the profile. This command configures the source IP address
au	source ip host IPADDR	This command configures the source IP address for the profile.
	ΠΑΟΟΚ	

7.2.1. CLI Configurations

acl	source ip IPADDR	This command configures the source IP address
	IPMASK	and mask for the profile.
acl	no source ip	This command removes the source IP address
		from the profile.
acl	destination ip host	This command configures a specific destination
	IPADDR	IP address for the profile.
acl	destination ip	This command configures the destination IP
	IPADDR IPMASK	address and mask for the profile.
acl	no destination ip	This command removes the destination IP address
		from the profile.
acl	14-source-port	This command configures UDP/TCP source port
	IPADDR	for the profile.
acl	no 14-source-port	This command removes the UDP/TCP source port
	IPADDR	from the profile.
acl	L4-destination-port	This command configures the UDP/TCP
	PORT	destination port for the profile.
acl	no 14-destination-port	This command removes the UDP/TCP destination
		port from the profile.
acl	vlan <1-4094>	This command configures the VLAN for the
		profile.
acl	no vlan	This command removes the limitation of the
		VLAN from the profile.
acl	source interface	This command configures the source interface for
	PORT_ID	the profile.
acl	no source interface	This command removes the source interface from
	PORT_ID	the profile.

Where the MAC mask allows users to filter a range of MAC in the packets' source MAC or destination MAC.

For example: source mac 00:01:02:03:04:05 ff:ff:ff:ff:00

→ The command will filter source MAC range from 00:01:02:03:00:00 to 00:01:02:03:ff:ff

Where the IPMASK mask allows users to filter a range of IP in the packets' source IP or destination IP.

For example: source ip 172.20.1.1 255.255.0.0

→ The command will filter source IP range from 172.20.0.0 to 172.20.255.255

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#access-list 111 L2SWITCH(config-acl)#vlan 2 L2SWITCH(config-acl)#source interface 1 L2SWITCH(config-acl)#show Profile Name: 111 Activate: disabled VLAN: 2 Source Interface: 1 Destination MAC Address: any Source MAC Address: any Ethernet Type: any Source IP Address: any Destination IP Address: any Source Application: any Destination Application: any

7.2.2. Web Configurations

Access Control List						
Access Control List Set	tings					
Profile Name		Action	Disable 🗸			
Ethernet Type	Any 🗸	VLAN	Any 🗸			
Source MAC	Any 🗸	Mask of Source MAC				
Destination MAC	Any 🗸	Mask of Destination MAC				
Source IP	Any 🗸	Mask of Source IP				
Destination IP	Any 🗸	Mask of Destination IP				
Source Application	Any 🗸					
Destination Application	Any 🗸					
Source Interface	Any 🗙 💉					
	Appl	ly Refresh				
Access Control List Stat	tus					
Profile Name	Justin	Action	Dorp			
Ethernet Type	0x0011	VLAN	1			
Source MAC	Any	Mask of Source MAC	None			
Destination MAC	Any	Mask of Destination MAC	None			
Source IP	Any	Mask of Source IP	None			
Destination IP	Any	Mask of Destination IP	None			
Source Application	Any	Destination Application	Any			
Source Interface	Any					
		Delete				

Parameter	Description
IP Туре	Selects IPv4 / IPv6 type for the profile.

Profile Name	The access control profile name.			
Action	Selects Disables/Drop/Permits action for the profile.			
Ethernet Type	Configures the ethernet type of the packets for the profile.			
VLAN	Configures the VLAN of the packets for the profile.			
Source MAC	Configures the source MAC of the packets for the profile.			
Mask of Source MAC	Configures the bitmap mask of the source MAC of the packets for the profile. If the Source MAC field has been configured and this field is empty, it means the profile will filter the one MAC configured in Source MAC field.			
Destination MAC	Configures the destination MAC of the packets for the profile.			
Mask of	Configures the bitmap mask of the destination MAC of the packets for the profile. If the Destination MAC field has been configured and this field			
Destination MAC	is empty, it means the profile will filter the one MAC configured in Destination MAC field.			
Source IP	Configures the source IP of the packets for the profile.			
Mask of Source IP	Configures the bitmap mask of the source IP of the packets for the profile. If the Source IP field has been configured and this field is empty, it means the profile will filter the one IP configured in Source IP field.			
Destination IP	Configures the destination IP of the packets for the profile.			
Mask of Destination IP	Configures the bitmap mask of the destination IP of the packets for the profile. If the Destination IP field has been configured and this field is empty, it means the profile will filter the one IP configured in Destination IP field.			
IP Protocol	Configures the IP protocol type. The setting will be used for Source Application and Destination Application.			
	TCP:0x06. UDP:0x11.			
Source Application	Configures the source UDP/TCP ports of the packets for the profile.			
Destination Application	Configures the destination UDP/TCP ports of the packets for the profile.			

Source Interface(s)	Configures one or a rage of the source interfaces of the packets for the profile.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

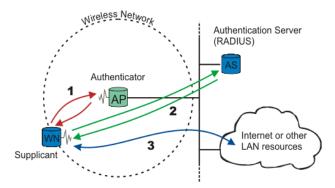
7.3. 802.1x

IEEE 802.1X is an IEEE Standard for port-based Network Access Control ("port" meaning a single point of attachment to the LAN infrastructure). It is part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an authentication mechanism to devices wishing to attach to a LAN, either establishing a point-to-point connection or preventing it if authentication fails. It is used for most wireless 802.11 access points and is based on the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP).

802.1X provides port-based authentication, which involves communications between a supplicant, authenticator, and authentication server. The supplicant is often software on a client device, such as a laptop, the authenticator is a wired Ethernet switch or wireless access point, and an authentication server is generally a RADIUS database. The authenticator acts like a security guard to a protected network. The supplicant (i.e., client device) is not allowed access through the authenticator to the protected side of the network until the supplicant's identity is authorized. An analogy to this is providing a valid passport at an airport before being allowed to pass through security to the terminal. With 802.1X port-based authenticator, the supplicant provides credentials, such as user name/password or digital certificate, to the authenticator, and the authenticator forwards the credentials to the authentication server for verification. If the credentials are valid (in the authentication server database), the supplicant (client device) is allowed to access resources located on the protected side of the network.

Upon detection of the new client (supplicant), the port on the switch (authenticator) is enabled and set to the "**unauthorized**" state. In this state, only 802.1X traffic is allowed; other traffic, such as DHCP and HTTP, is blocked at the network layer (Layer 3). The authenticator sends out the EAP-Request identity to the supplicant, the supplicant responds with the EAP-response packet that the authenticator forwards to the authenticating server. If the authenticating server accepts the request, the authenticator sets the port to the "authorized" mode and normal traffic is allowed. When the supplicant logs off, it sends an EAP-logoff message to the authenticator. The authenticator then sets the port to the "unauthorized" state, once again blocking all non-EAP traffic.

The following figure illustrates how a client connecting to an IEEE 802.1xauthentication enabled port goes through a validation process. The Switch prompts the client for login information in the form of a user name and password.



When the client provides the login credentials, the Switch sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server validates whether this client is allowed access to the port.

Local User Accounts

By storing user profiles locally on the Switch, your Switch is able to authenticate users without interacting with a network authentication server. However, there is a limit on the number of users you may authenticate in this way.

Guest VLAN:

The Guest VLAN in IEEE 802.1x port authentication on the switch to provide limited services to clients, such as downloading the IEEE 802.1x client. These clients might be upgrading their system for IEEE 802.1x authentication.

When you enable a guest VLAN on an IEEE 802.1x port, the switch assigns clients to a guest VLAN when the switch does not receive a response to its EAP request/identity frame or when EAPOL packets are not sent by the client.

Port Parameters:

• Admin Control Direction:

- both drop incoming and outgoing packets on the port when auser has notpassed 802.1x port authentication.
- in drop only incoming packets on the port when a user has notpassed802.1x port authentication.

• Re-authentication:

Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her user name and password to stay connected to the port.

• Reauth-period:

Specify how often a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port. The acceptable range for this field is 0 to 65535 seconds.

• Port Control Mode:

auto: Users can access network after authenticating.force-authorized: Users can access network without authentication.force-unauthorized : Users cannot access network.

• Quiet Period:

Specify a period of the time the client has to wait before the next re-authentication attempt. This will prevent the Switch from becoming overloaded with continuous re-authentication attempts from the client. The acceptable range for this field is 0 to 65535 seconds.

• Server Timeout:

The server-timeout value is used for timing out the Authentication Server.

• Supp-Timeout:

The supp-timeout value is the initialization value used for timing out a Supplicant.

• Max-req Time:

Specify the amount of times the Switch will try to connect to the authentication server before determining the server is down. The acceptable range for this field is 1 to 10 times.

7.3.1. Global Settings

7.3.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show dot1x	This command displays the current
		802.1x configurations.
enable	show dot1x username	This command displays the current
		user accounts for the local
		authentication.
enable	show dot1x accounting-record	This command displays the local
		accounting records.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	dot1x authentication (disable enable)	This command enables/disables the
		802.1x authentication on the
		switch.
configure	dot1x authentic-method	This command configures the
	(local radius)	authentic method of 802.1x.
configure	no dot1xauthentic-method	This command configures the
		authentic method of 802.1x to
		default.
configure	dot1x accounting (disable enable)	This command enables/disables
		the dot1x local accounting records.
configure	dot1x accounting-clean	This command cleans all of the
		accounting records.
configure	dot1x default	This command sets all of the
		configuration to default settings.
configure	dot1x guest-vlan <1-4094>	This command configures the guest
		vlan.
configure	no dot1x guest-vlan	This command removes the guest
		vlan.
configure	dot1x radius primary-server-ip <ip></ip>	This command configures the
	port PORTID	primary radius server.
configure	dot1x radius primary-server-ip <ip></ip>	This command configures the
	port PORTID key KEY	primary radius server.
configure	no dot1x radius primary-server-ip	This command removes the
		secondary radius server.
configure	dot1x radius secondary-server-ip	This command configures the
	<ip> port PORTID</ip>	secondary radius server.
configure	dot1x radius secondary-server-ip	This command configures the
	<ip> port PORTID key KEY</ip>	secondary radius server.
configure	no dot1x radius secondary-server-ip	This command removes the
		secondary radius server.
configure	dot1x username <username></username>	This command configures the user
	<password></password>	account for local authentication.

configure	no dot1x username <string></string>	This command deletes the user
		account for local authentication.

7.3.1.2. Web Configurations

		802.1X		
Configuration	Port Settings			
Global Settings	_	_		
State				
Authentication Method Guest VLAN	Local V			
Primary Radius Server		UDP Port :	Shared Key :	
Secondary Radius Server	IP :	UDP Port : Shared Key :		
	[Apply Refresh		
Global Status				
State	Disabled			
Authentication Method	Local			
Guest VLAN 0				
Primary Radius Server	IP : -	UDP Port : -	Shared Key : -	
Secondary Radius Server	IP : -	UDP Port : -	Shared Key : -	

Parameter	Description
Global Settings	
State	Select Enable to permit 802.1x authentication on the Switch. Note: You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Authentication Method	Select whether to use Local or RADIUS as the authentication method. The Local method of authentication uses the "guest" and "user" user groups of the user account database on the Switch itself to authenticate. However, only a certain number of accounts can exist at one time. RADIUS is a security protocol used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of the device. In

	essence, RADIUS allows you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.
Guest VLAN	Configure the guest VLAN.
Primary Radius Server	When RADIUS is selected as the 802.1x authentication method, the Primary Radius Server will be used for all authentication attempts.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS server for authentication is 1812.
Share Key	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the Switch.
Second Radius Server	This is the backup server used only when the Primary Radius Server is down.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

7.3.2. Port Settings

7.3.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description			
enable	show dot1x	This command displays the current			
		802.1x configurations.			
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to			
		configure node.			
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface			
		configure node.			
interface	dot1x admin-control-direction	This command configures the			
	(both in)	control direction for blocking			
		packets.			
interface	dot1x default	This command sets the port			
		configuration to default settings.			
interface	dot1x max-req <1-10>	This command sets the max-req			
		times for the port.			
interface	dot1x port-control (auto force-	This command configures the port			
	authorized force-unauthorized)	control mode on the port.			
interface	dot1x authentication (disable enable)	This command enables/disables the			
		802.1x authentication on the port.			
interface	dot1x reauthentication	This command enables/disables re-			
	(disable enable)	authentication on the port.			
interface	dot1x timeout quiet-period	This command configures the			
		quiet-period value on the port.			
interface	dot1x timeout server-timeout	This command configures the			
		server-timeout value on the port.			
interface	dot1x timeout reauth-period	This command configures the			
		reauth-period value on the port.			
interface	dot1x timeout supp-timeout	This command configures the supp-			
		timeout value on the port.			
interface	dot1x guest-vlan (disable enable)	This command disables / enables			
		guest VLAN on the port.			

7.3.2.2. Web Configurations

				802.1	X						
Con	ifiguratio	n Por	Settings								
ort S	ettings										
Por	t	Fror	n: 1 🗸 To: 1 🗸								
802	.1X State	Dis	able 🗸								
Adm	nin Contr	ol Direction	Reauthentication	Por	t Control M	Node	Guest	t VLAN	Max-re	Max-req Times	
	Both	~	Disable 🗸	Auto		~	Disa	ble 🗸	2		
R	leauth-pe	riod (sec)	Quiet-period (sec)	Sup	p-timeout	(sec)		Server-timeout (sec)		Reset to Default	
	3600		20		30]	16				
Note	: Please	e don't set EN	ABLE on all ports	at the sa	ame time.						
			A	pply Re	fresh						
ort S	tatus										
				Port		Max-					
Port	802.1X State	Admin Control Direction	Reauthentication	Control Mode	Guest VLAN	req Times	Reauth- period		Supp- timeout	Server- timeout	
1	Disabled	Both	Disabled	Auto	Disabled	2	3600	20	30	16	
2	Disabled	Both	Disabled	Auto	Disabled	2	3600	20	30	16	
3	Disabled	Both	Disabled	Auto	Disabled	2	3600	20	30	16	
4	Disabled	Both	Disabled	Auto	Disabled	2	3600	20	30	16	
5	Disabled	Both	Disabled	Auto	Disabled	2	3600	20	30	16	
6	Disabled	Both	Disabled	Auto	Disabled	2	3600	20	30	16	
Dari	ameter		Description								
			Description								
Port	t Settin	igs									
Port			Select a port	numbe	r to con	figure	•				
			Select Enable to permit 802.1x authentication on the port.								
302.	1x Stat	æ	You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch								
		before configuring it on each port.									
		Select Both to drop incoming and outgoing packets on the									
٩dm	nin Cor	ntrol	port when a	-		•	•	U 1			
	ction		Select In to		-		-	-			
Direction		user has not							which t		
				-		-				s or he	
Re-authentication		ication		Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her user name and password to stay connected to the port.							

Port Control Mode Select Force Authorized to always force this port to be authorized.

Select **Force Unauthorized** to always force this port to be unauthorized. No packets can pass through this port.

Guest VLAN	Select Disable to disable Guest VLAN on the port. Select Enable to enable Guest VLAN on the port.
Max-req Time	Specify the amount of times the Switch will try to connect to the authentication server before determining the server is down. The acceptable range for this field is 1 to 10 times.
Reauth period	Specify how often a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port. The acceptable range for this field is 0 to 65535 seconds.
Quiet period	Specify a period of the time the client has to wait before the next re-authentication attempt. This will prevent the Switch from becoming overloaded with continuous re-authentication attempts from the client. The acceptable range for this field is 0 to 65535 seconds.
Supp timeout	Specify how long the Switch will wait before communicating with the server. The acceptable range for this field is 0 to 65535 seconds.
Server timeout	Specify how long the Switch to time out the Authentication Server. The acceptable range for this field is 0 to 65535 seconds.
Reset to Default	Select this and click Apply to reset the custom 802.1x port authentication settings back to default.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

7.4. Port Security

The Switch will learn the MAC address of the device directly connected to a particular port and allow traffic through. We will ask the question: "How do we control who and how many can connect to a switch port?" This is where port security can assist us. The Switch allow us to control which devices can connect to a switch port or how many of them can connect to it (such as when a hub or another switch is connected to the port).

Let's say we have only one switch port left free and we need to connect five hosts to it. What can we do? Connect a hub or switch to the free port! Connecting a switch or a hub to a port has implications. It means that the network will have more traffic. If a switch or a hub is connected by a user instead of an administrator, then there are chances that loops will be created. So, it is best that number of hosts allowed to connect is restricted at the switch level. This can be done using the "port-security limit" command. This command configures the maximum number of MAC addresses that can source traffic through a port.

Port security can sets maximum number of MAC addresses allowed per interface. When the limit is exceeded, incoming packets with new MAC addresses are dropped. It can be use MAC table to check it. The static MAC addresses are included for the limit.

Note: If you configure a port of the Switch from disabled to enabled, all of the MAC learned by this port will be clear.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show port-security	This command displays the current port security
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	port-security	This command enables / disables the global port
	(disable enable)	security function.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure node.
interface	port-security	This command enables / disables the port security
	(disable enable)	function on the specific port.
interface	port-security limit	This command configures the maximum MAC
	<1-1000>	entries on the specific port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range configure node.
	gigabitethernet1/0/	
	PORTLISTS	
if-range	port-security	This command enables / disables the port security
	(disable enable)	function for the specified ports
if-range	port-security limit	This command configures the maximum MAC
	<1-1000>	entries for the specified ports.

7.4.1. CLI Configurations

7.4.2. Web Configurations

		Port	Security			
	·· C-#'		_	_		
ort Securit	y Settings		_	_		
Port Secu	rity [Disable 🗸				
	Port	State			Maximum MAC	
From: [1 🕶 To: 🛛 💌	Disable 🗸	•	5	(1~1000)	
Apply Refresh						
ort Securit	y Status					
Port	State	Maximum MAC	Port	State	Maximum MAC	
1	Disable	5	2	Disable	5	
3	Disable	5	4	Disable	5	
5	Disable	5 6 Disable 5				

Parameter	Description			
Port Security Settings				
Port Security	Select Enable/Disable to permit Port Security on the Switch.			
Port	Select a port number to configure.			
State	Select Enable/Disable to permit Port Security on the port.			
Maximum MAC	The maximum number of MAC addresses allowed per interface. The acceptable range is 1 to 1000.			
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.			

8. Monitor

8.1. Alarm

The feature displays if there are any abnormal situation need process immediately.

Notice: The Alarm DIP switch allow users to configure if send alarm message when the corresponding event occurs.

For Example:

P1: ON, The Switch will send alarm message when port 1 is link down.

PWR: ON, The Switch will send alarm message when the main power supply disconnect. RPS: ON, The Switch will send alarm message when the redundant power supply disconnect.

8.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show alarm-info	This command displays alarm information.

8.1.2. Web Configurations

Alarm						
Alarm Information						
Alarm Status	No Alarm.					
Alarm Reason(s)						
DIP switch Settings						
DIP switch	Status	DIP switch	Status			
PWR	Disable	RPS	Disable			
Refresh						

Parameter	Description			
Alarm Information				
Alarm Status	This field indicates if there is any alarm events.			
Alarm Reason(s)	This field displays all of the detail alarm events.			
Alarm DIP Switch S	Settings			
DIP Switch	The field displays the DIP Switch name.			
Status	The field indicates the DIP Switch current status.			

8.2. Port Statistics

This feature helps users to monitor the ports' statistics, to display the link up ports' traffic utilization only.

8.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show port-statistics	This command displays the link up ports'
		statistics.

8.2.2. Web Configurations

Port Statistics								
ort Statist	ics	_	_	_	_	_	_	_
Port	Transmit Drops	Receive Drops	Transmit Errors	Receive Errors	Transmit Packets	Receive Packets	Transmit Bytes	Receive Bytes
4	0	0	0	0	482	250	63744	46402
				R	Refresh Clear			

Parameter	Description
Port	Select a port or a range of ports to display their statistics.
Rx Packets	The field displays the received packet count.
Tx Packets	The field displays the transmitted packet count.
Rx Bytes	The field displays the received byte count.
Tx Bytes	The field displays the transmitted byte count.
Rx Errors	The field displays the received error count.
Tx Errors	The field displays the transmitted error count.
Rx Drops	The field displays the received drop count.
Tx Drops	The field displays the transmitted drop count.
Refresh	Click this button to refresh the screen quickly.

8.3. Port Utilization

This feature helps users to monitor the ports' traffic utilization, to display the link up ports' traffic utilization only.

8.3.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show port-utilization	This command displays the link up ports' traffic
	(bps Kbps Mbps)	utilization.

8.3.2. Web Configurations

Port Utilization						
Port Utiliza	ation					
Unit	bps 🗸		Apply Refresh			
Port	Speed	Rx Utilization (%)	Rx Utilization (bps)	Tx Utilization (%)	Tx Utilization (bps)	
6	1000	0.00	3266	0.00	0	

Parameter	Description
Port Utilization	
Unit	Select a unit for displaying the port utilization.
Port	Select a port or a range of ports to display their RMON statistics.
Speed	The current port speed.
Rx Utilization (%)	The port receiving traffic utilization in percentage
Rx Utilization (bps)	The port receiving traffic utilization in bits per second
Tx Utilization (%)	The port transmitting traffic utilization in percentage
Tx Utilization (bps)	The port transmitting traffic utilization in bits per second
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.4. RMON Statistics

This feature helps users to monitor or clear the port's RMON statistics.

8.4.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show rmon statistics	This command displays the RMON statistics.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure node.
configure	clear rmon statistics [IFNAME]	This command clears one port's or all ports' RMON statistics.

8.4.2. Web Configurations

RMON Statistics				
ON Statist	ics			
Port 4	✓ Show	Clear		
		Port 4 (Ac	tive)	
	Total Octets	1787175		
	BroadcastPkts	1605	UnicastPkts	1342
	Non-unicastPkts	5664	MulticastPkts	4059
Inbound	FragmentsPkts	0	UndersizePkts	0
mbound	OversizePkts	0	DiscardsPkts	0
	ErrorPkts	0	UnknownProtos	0
	AlignError	0	CRCAlignErrors	0
	Jabbers	0	DropEvents	0
	Total Octets	306298		
	BroadcastPkts	5	UnicastPkts	478
Outbound	Non-unicastPkts	357	Collisions	0
outoounu	LateCollision	0	SingleCollision	0
	MultipleCollision	0	DiscardsPkts	0
	ErrorPkts	0		
# of packets received	64 Octets	3033	65to127 Octets	1468
	128to255 Octets	1058	256to511 Octets	563
with a length of	512to1023 Octets	1582	1024toMax Octets	137

Parameter	Description
Port	Select a port or a range of ports to display their RMON statistics.
Show	Show them.
Clear	Clear the RMON statistics for the port or a range of ports.

8.5. SFP Information

The SFP information allows user to know the SFP module's information, such as vendor name, connector type, revision, serial number, manufacture date, and to know the DDMI information if the SFP modules have supported the DDMI function.

8.5.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show sfp info port PORT_ID	This command displays the SFP
		information.
enable	show sfp ddmi port	This command displaysthe SFP DDMI
	PORT_ID	status.

8.5.2. Web Configurations

	SFP Information		
SFP	Information		
	Port - Apply		
		SFP Information	
	Fiber Cable	N/A	
	Connector	N/A	
	Wavelength(nm)	N/A	
	Transfer Distance	N/A	
	DDM Supported	N/A	
	Vendor Name	N/A	
	Vendor PN	N/A	
	Vendor rev	N/A	
	Vendor SN	N/A	
	Date code	N/A	

Parameter	Description
SFP Information	
Port	Select a port number to configure.
Apply	Click Apply to display the SFP information.
SFP Information	
Fiber Cable	To indicate if the fiber cable is connected.
Connector	Code of optical connector type.
Vendor Name	SFP vendor name.

Vendor PN	Part Number.
Vendor rev	Revision level for part number.
Vendor SN	Serial number (ASCII).
Date Code	Manufacturing date code.

Notice: If the fiber cable is not connected, the Rx Power fields are not available.

8.6. Traffic Monitor

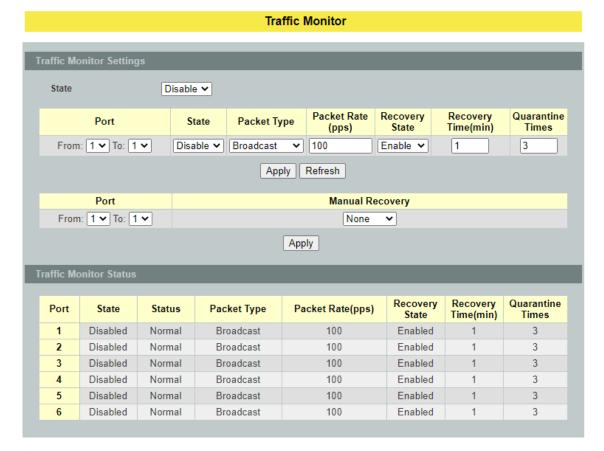
The function can be enabled / disabled on a specific port or globally be enabled disabled on the Switch. The function will monitor the broadcast / multicast / broadcast and multicast packets rate. If the packet rate is over the user's specification, the port will be blocked. And if the recovery function is enabled, the port will be enabled after recovery time.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show traffic-monitor	This command displays the traffic monitor
		configurations and current status.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	traffic-monitor	This command enables / disables the traffic
	(disable enable)	monitor on the Switch.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure
		node.
interface	traffic-monitor	This command enables / disables the traffic
	(disable enable)	monitor on the port.
interface	traffic-monitor rate	This command configures the packet rate and
	RATE_LIMIT type	packet type for the traffic monitor on the port.
	(bcast mcast bcast+mc	bcast – Broadcast packets.
	ast)	mcast – Multicast packets.
		bcast+ mcast - Broadcast packets and Multicast
		packets.
interface	traffic-monitor	This command enables / disables the recovery
	recovery	function for the traffic monitor on the port.
	(disable enable)	
interface	traffic-monitor	This command configures the recovery time for
	recovery time <1-60>	the traffic monitor on the port.
interface	traffic-monitor	This command configures the quarantine times
	quarantine times	for the traffic monitor on the port.
	<1-20>	

8.6.1. CLI Configurations

configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range configure
	gigabitethernet1/0/ PORTLISTS	node.
if-range	traffic-monitor	This command enables / disables the traffic
	(disable enable)	monitor on the port.
if-range	traffic-monitor	This command configures the packet rate and
	rateRATE_LIMIT	packet type for the traffic monitor on the port.
	type	bcast – Broadcast packets.
	(bcast mcast bcast+mc	mcast – Multicast packets.
	ast)	bcast+ mcast - Broadcast packets and Multicast
		packets.
if-range	traffic-monitor	This command enables / disables the recovery
	recovery	function for the traffic monitor on the port.
	(disable enable)	
if-range	traffic-monitor	This command configures the recovery time for
_	recovery time <1-60>	the traffic monitor on the port.
if-range	traffic-monitor	This command configures the quarantine times
	quarantine times	for the traffic monitor on the port.
	<1-20>	_

8.6.2. Web Configurations



Parameter	Description		
Traffic Monitor Settings			
State	Globally enables / disables the traffic monitor function.		
Port	The port range which you want to configure.		
State	Enables / disables the traffic monitor function on these ports.		
Packet Type	Specify the packet type which you want to monitor.		
Packet Rate	Specify the packet rate which you want to monitor.		
Recover State	Enables / disables the recovery function for the traffic monitor function on these ports.		
Recovery Time	Configures the recovery time for the traffic monitor function on these ports. (Range: $1 - 60$ minutes)		
Quarantine Times	Configures the quarantine times for the traffic monitor on these ports. (Range: $1 - 20$ times)		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		
Manual Recovery	Select Unblock to enable these ports blocked by traffic monitor.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		

9. Management

9.1. SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is used in network management systems to monitor network-attached devices for conditions that warrant administrative attention. SNMP is a component of the Internet Protocol Suite as defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). It consists of a set of standards for network management, including an application layer protocol, a database schema, and a set of data objects. SNMP exposes management data in the form of variables on the managed systems, which describe the system configuration. These variables can then be queried (and sometimes set) by managing applications.

Support below MIBs:

- RFC 1157 A Simple Network Management Protocol
- RFC 1213 MIB-II
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIB
- RFC 1643 Ethernet Interface MIB
- RFC 1757 RMON Group 1,2,3,9

SNMP community act like passwords and are used to define the security parameters of SNMP clients in an SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c environments. The default SNMP community is "public" for both SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c before SNMP v3 is enabled. Once SNMP v3 is enabled, the communities of SNMP v1 and v2c have to be unique and cannot be shared.

Network ID of Trusted Host and Number of Mask Bit:

The IP address is a combination of the Network ID and the Host ID.

Network ID = (Host IP & Mask).

User need only input the network ID and leave the host ID to 0. If user has input the host ID, such as 192.168.1.102/24, the system will reset the host ID, such as 192.168.1.0

Note: Allow user to configure the community string and rights only. User configures the Community String and the Rights and the Network ID of Trusted Host=0.0.0.0, Subnet Mask=0.0.0.0. It means that all hosts with the community string can access the Switch.

9.1.1. SNMP

9.1.1.1. SNMP Settings

9.1.1.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show snmp	This command displays the SNMP configurations.

enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	snmp (disable enable)	This command disables/enables the SNMP on the
		switch.
configure	snmp system-contact	This command configures contact information for
	STRING	the system.
configure	snmp system-location	This command configures the location
_	STRING	information for the system.
configure	snmp system-name	This command configures a name for the system.
	STRING	(The System Name is same as the host name)
configure	no snmp system-	This command resets the contact information for
	contact STRING	the system.
configure	no snmp system-	This command resets the location information for
	location STRING	the system.
configure	no snmp system-	This command resets the system name for the
	name STRING	system.

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#snmp enable L2SWITCH(config)#snmp system-contact IT engineer L2SWITCH(config)#snmp system-location Branch-Office

9.1.1.1.2. Web Configurations

	SNMP	
SNMP Settings	Community Name	
SNMP Settings		
SNMP State	Disable 💌	
System Name	L2SWITCH	
System Location		
System Contact		
	Apply Refresh	

Parameter	Description
SNMP Settings	
SNMP State	Select Enable to activate SNMP on the Switch. Select Disable to not use SNMP on the Switch.
System Name	Type a System Name for the Switch. (The System Name is same as the host name)
System Location	Type a System Location for the Switch.
System Contact	Type a System Contact for the Switch.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.1.1.2. Community Name

SNMP community act like passwords and are used to define the security parameters of SNMP clients in an SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c environments. The default SNMP community is "public" for both SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c.

Network ID of Trusted Host:

- \checkmark The IP address is a combination of the Network ID and the Host ID.
 - ✓ Network ID = (Host IP & Mask).

 \checkmark User need only input the network ID and leave the host ID to 0. If user has input the host ID, such as 192.168.1.102, the system will reset the host ID, such as 192.168.1.0

User configures the Community String and the Rights and the Network ID of Trusted Host=0.0.0, Subnet Mask=0.0.0. It means that all hosts with the community string can access the Switch.

9.1.1.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show snmp	This command displays the SNMP configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	snmp community	This command configures the SNMP community
	STRING (ro rw)	name.
	trusted-host IPADDR	

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal

L2SWITCH(config)#snmp community public rw trusted-host 192.168.200.106/24

9.1.1.2.2. Web Configurations

			SNMP			
SNM	P Settings	Community Name				
Comm	unity Name Settings					
Co	mmunity String	Rights	IP Version	Network ID of Trust	ed Host Number of	f Mask Bit
		Read-Only 🗸	IPv4 🗸			
Apply Refresh						
Comm	unity Name List					
No.	Community Str	ing Rights	IP Version	Network ID of Trusted Host	Number of Mask Bit	Action
1	111	Read-Only	IPv4	192.168.202.0	24	Delete
2	666	Read-Only	IPv6	2100::	64	Delete

Parameter	Description		
Community Name	Community Name Settings		
Community String	Enter a Community string, this will act as a password for requests from the management station. An SNMP community string is a text string that acts as a password. It is used to authenticate messages that are sent between the management station (the SNMP manager) and the device (the SNMP agent). The community string is included in every packet that is transmitted between the SNMP manager and the SNMP agent.		
Rights	Select Read-Only to allow the SNMP manager using this string to collect information from the Switch. Select Read-Write to allow the SNMP manager using this string to create or edit MIBs (configure settings on the Switch).		
IP Version	Selects the IP type, IPv4 or IPv6.		
Network ID of Trusted Host	Type the IP address of the remote SNMP management station in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.0.		
Number of Mask Bit	Type the number of Mask Bit for the IP address of the remote SNMP.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		
Community Name	List		

No.	This field indicates the community number. It is used for identification only. Click on the individual community number to edit the community settings.
Community String	This field displays the SNMP community string. An SNMP community string is a text string that acts as a password.
Right	This field displays the community string's rights. This will be Read Only or Read Write .
IP Version	This field displays the IP type.
Network ID of Trusted Host	This field displays the IP address of the remote SNMP management station after it has been modified by the subnet mask.
Number of Mask Bit	This field displays the number of Mask Bit for the IP address of the remote SNMP management station.
Action	Click Delete to remove a specific Community String.

9.1.2. SNMP Trap

- 9.1.2.1. Receiver Settings
- 9.1.2.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show snmp	This command displays the SNMP configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure node.
configure	snmp trap-receiver IPADDR (v1 v2c) COMMUNITY	This command configures the trap receiver's configurations, including the IP address, version (v1 or v2c) and community.
configure	snmp trap-ipv6- receiver IPADDR (v1 v2c) COMMUNITY	This command configures the trap IPv6 receiver's configurations, including the IP address, version (v1 or v2c) and community.

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal

L2SWITCH(config)#snmp trap-receiver 192.168.200.106 v2c public

9.1.2.1.2. Web Configurations

SNMP Trap						
Trap Receiver Trap Event Port Trap Event						
Trap Receiv	er Settings					
IP V	ersion	IP Address	Ver	sion	Community Stri	ng
IPv4 🗸			v1 🗸			
Apply Refresh						
Trap Receiver List						
No.	IP Version	IP Address	Version	Community	y String	Action
1	IPv4	192.168.202.154	v1	publi	c [Delete

Parameter	Description	
Trap Receiver Setti	ngs	
IP Version	Selects the IP version, IPv4 or IPv6.	
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the remote trap station in dotted decimal notation.	

Version	Select the version of the Simple Network Management Protocol to use. v1 or v2c .
Community String	Specify the community string used with this remote trap station.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Trap Receiver List	
No.	This field displays the index number of the trap receiver entry. Click the number to modify the entry.
IP Version	This field displays the IP address version.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the remote trap station.
Version	This field displays the version of Simple Network Management Protocol in use. v1 or v2c.
Community String	This field displays the community string used with this remote trap station.
Action	Click Delete to remove a configured trap receiver station.

9.1.2.2. Event Settings

The features allow users to enable/disables individual trap notification.

alarm-over-heat alarm-over-load alarm-power-fail	 Trap when system's temperature is too high. Trap when system is over load. Trap when system power is over voltage/under voltage/ RPS over voltage/RPS under voltage.
bpdu	- Trap when port is blocked by BPDU Guard/BDPU Root Guard/BPDU port state changed.
dual-homing	- Trap when port is blocked by Dual Homing.
dying-gasy	- Trap when system is power off.
loop-detection	- Trap when port is blocked by Loop Detection.
pd-alive	- Trap when PD device has no responses.
port-admin-state-change	e - Trap when port is enabled/disable by administrator.
port-link-change	- Trap when port is link up/down change.
power-source-change	- Trap when the power source has been changed.
	(AC to DC or DC to AC)
stp-topology-change	- Trap when the STP topology change.
traffic-monitor	- Trap when port is blocked by Traffic Monitor.
xpress-ring	- Trap when port is blocked by Xpress Ring.

9.1.2.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description	
enable	show snmp trap-event	This command displays the SNMP	
		configurations.	
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to	
	_	configure node.	
configure	snmp trap-event alarm-over-heat	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	alarm-over-heat trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event alarm-over-load	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	alarm-over-load trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event alarm-power-fail	This command enables/disables the	
	(enable/enable)	alarm-power-fail trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event bpdu	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	BPDU port state change/BPDU Root	
		Guard/BPDU Guard trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event dual-homing	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	dual-homing trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event dying-gasp	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	dying-gasp trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event loop-detection	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	loop-detection trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event pd-alive	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	pd-alive trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event port-admin-state-	This command enables/disables the	
	change (disable/enable)	port-admin-state-change trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event port-link-change	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	port-link-change trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event power-source-	This command enables/disables the	
	change (disable/enable)	power-source-change trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event stp-topology-	This command enables/disables the	
	change (disable/enable)	stp-topology-change trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event traffic-monitor	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	traffic-monitor trap.	
configure	snmp trap-event xpress-ring	This command enables/disables the	
	(disable/enable)	xpress-ring trap.	

9.1.2.2.2. Web Configurations

		SNMP Trap	
Trap Receiver	Trap Event	Port Trap Event	
Trap Evont Sottings		_	
Trap Event Settings		_	
O Select All O D)eselect All		
Alarm-Over-Heat			
Alarm-Over-Load			
🗹 Alarm-Power-Fail			
BPDU-Guard			
🗹 Dual-Homing			
Loop-Detection			
Port-Admin-State-Char	nge		
Port-Link-Change			
STP-Topology-Change	<u>}</u>		
Traffic-Monitor			
	(Apply Refresh	

Parameter	Description		
Trap Event State Settings			
Select all	Enables all of trap events.		
Deselect All	Disables all os trap events.		
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.		
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

9.1.2.3. Port Event Settings

The features allow users to enable/disables port-link-change trap notification by individual port.

9.1.2.3.1. CL	I Configurations
---------------	------------------

Node	Command	Description
enable	show snmp port-link-change-trap	This command displays the SNMP
		port link-change trap configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
interface	snmp port-link-change-trap	This command enables the link
		change trap on the specific port.

interface	no snmp port-link-change-trap	This command disables the link
		change trap on the specific port.
configure	interface range	This command enters the if-range
	gigabitethernet1/0/PORTLISTS	configure node.
if-range	snmp port-link-change-trap	This command enables the link
		change trap on the specific ports.
if-range	no snmp port-link-change-trap	This command disables the link
		change trap on the specific ports.

9.1.2.3.2. Web Configurations

Trap Receiver Trap Event Port Trap Event Port Link-Change Trap Settings Port State From: 1 v To: 1 v Enable v Apply Refresh Port Link-Change Trap Status Port State Port Link-Change Trap Status Port State 1 Enabled 2 Enabled 3 Enabled 4 Enabled 5 Enabled 6 Enabled	SNMP Trap				
Port State From: 1 v To: 1 v Enable v Apply Refresh Port Link-Change Trap Status Port State 1 Enabled 2 Enabled 3 Enabled	Trap Receiver Trap Event Port Trap Event				
From: 1 v To: 1 v Enable v Apply Refresh Port Link-Change Trap Status Port State 1 Enabled 2 Enabled 3 Enabled 4 Enabled	Port Link-Change Trap Set	tings			
Apply Refresh Port Link-Change Trap Status Port State 1 Enabled 2 Enabled 3 Enabled 4 Enabled			State		
Port Link-Change Trap StatusPortStatePortState1Enabled2Enabled3Enabled4Enabled	From: 1 🗸 To: 1 🗸		Enable 🗸		
PortStatePortState1Enabled2Enabled3Enabled4Enabled		Apply	Refresh		
1Enabled2Enabled3Enabled4Enabled	Port Link-Change Trap Status				
3 Enabled 4 Enabled	Port	State	Port	State	
	1	Enabled	2	Enabled	
5 Enabled 6 Enabled	3	Enabled	4	Enabled	
	5	Enabled	6	Enabled	

Parameter	Description		
Port Link-Change	Frap Settings		
Port	Selects a port or a range of ports to configure the port event trap.		
State	Enables / Disable the port link change trap.		
Port Link-Change Trap Status			
Port	The port ID.		
State	The state of the port.		

9.1.3. SNMPv3

9.1.3.1. SNMPv3 Group

9.1.3.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show snmp group	This command displays all snmp v3 groups.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure node.
configure	snmp group GROUPNAME noauth (read STRINGS write STRINGS notify STRINGS)	Configures v3 group of non- authentication.
configure	snmp group GROUPNAME auth (read STRINGS write STRINGS notify STRINGS)	Configures v3 group of authentication.
configure	snmp group GROUPNAME priv (read STRINGS write STRINGS notify STRINGS)	Configures v3 group of authentication and encryption.
configure	no snmp group GROUPNAME	This command removes a v3 group from switch.

9.1.3.1.2. Web Configurations

				SNMPv3			
	Group Settings	User Se	ttings	View Setting	js		
(Group Settings						
	Group Name Security Level Read View Write View Notify View	noauth	v	Apply Refre	sh		
(Group Status						
	Group Name	Security Model	Security Level	Read View	Write View	Notify View	Action
				Empty!			

Parameter	Description		
Group Name	Enter the v3 user name.		
Security Level	Select the security level of the v3 group to use.		

Read View	Note that if a group is defined without a read view than all objects are available to read. (default value is none .)	
Write View	if no write or notify view is defined, no write access is granted and no objects can send notifications to members of the group. (default value is none .)	
Notify View	By using a notify view, a group determines the list of notifications its users can receive. (default value is none)	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
SNMPv3 Group Sta	itus	
Group Name	This field displays the v3 user name.	
Security Model	This field displays the security model of the group. Always displayed v3 : User-based Security Model (USM)	
Security Level	This field displays the security level to this group.	
Read View		
Write View	These fields display the View list of this group.	
Notify View		
Action	Click Delete to remove a v3 group.	

9.1.3.2. SNMPv3 User

9.1.3.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	snmp user USERNAME	Configures v3 user of non-
configure	GROUPNAME noauth	authentication.
	snmp user USERNAME	
configure	GROUPNAME auth	Configures v3 user of authentication.
	(MD5 SHA) STRINGS	
	snmp user USERNAME	
configure	GROUPNAME priv	Configures v3 user osnmf authentication
	(MD5 SHA) STRINGS des	and encryption.
	STRINGS	
configure	no snmp user USERNAME	This command removes a v3 user from
configure	GROUPNAME	switch.

9.1.3.2.2. Web Configurations

		SNM	Pv3		
Group Settings	User Settings	View Se	ttings		
User Settings					
Username					
Group Name					
Security Level	noauth 🛩				
Auth Algorithm	MD5 🗸				
Auth Password					
Priv Algorithm	DES 🗸				
Priv Password					
		Apply	efresh		
User Status					
Username	Group Namo	Auth Protocol	Priv Protocol	Rowstatus	Action
Username	Group Name	Empt		Rowstatus	ACTION
		Empty	/:		

Parameter	Description
User Name	Enter the v3 user name.
Group Name	Map the v3 user name into a group name.
	Select the security level of the v3 user to use.
Converter Lorrol	noauth means no authentication and no encryption.
Security Level	auth means messages are authenticated but not encrypted.
	priv means messages are authenticated and encrypted.
Auth Algorithm	Select MD5 or SHA Algorithm when security level is auth or priv .
Auth Password	Set the password for this user when security level is auth or priv. (pass phrases must be at least 8 characters long!)
Priv Algorithm	Select DES encryption when security level is priv .
Priv Password	Set the password for this user when security level is priv. (pass phrases must be at least 8 characters long)
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
SNMPv3 User Statu	us

User Name	This field displays the v3 user name.	
Group Name	This field displays the group name which the v3 user mapping.	
Auth Protocol	These fields display the security level to this v3 user.	
Priv Protocol		
Rowstatus	This field displays the v3 user rowstatus.	
Action	Click Delete to remove a v3 user.	

9.1.3.3. SNMPv3 View

9.1.3.3.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description	
enable	show snmp view	This command displays all snmp v3	
endore	shew shirip view	view.	
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to	
		configure node.	
configure	snmp view VIEWNAME	To identify the subtree.	
	STRINGS (included excluded)		
configure	no snmp view VIEWNAME	This command removes a v3 view from	
configure	STRINGS	switch.	

9.1.3.3.2. Web Configurations

			SINIVIE VS		
	Group Settings	User Settings	View Settings		
١	/iew Settings				
	View Name View Subtree View Type	included V	Apply Refresh		
\	/iew Status				
	View Name		View Subtree Empty!	View Type	Action

Parameter	Description
View Name	Enter the v3 view name for creating an entry in the SNMPv3 MIB view table.

View Subtree	The OID defining the root of the subtree to add to (or exclude from) the named view.
View Type	Select included or excluded to define subtree adding to the view or not.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
SNMPv3 View State	us
View Name	This field displays the v3 view name.
View Subtree	This field displays the subtree.
View Type	This field displays the subtree adding to the view or not.
Action	Click Delete to remove a v3 view.

9.2. Auto Provision

Auto provision is a service that service provider can quickly, easily and automatically configure remote device or doing firmware upgrade at remote side.

1. When the Auto Provision is enabled, the Switch will download the auto provision information file from the auto provision server first.

The file name is followed below naming rule: *Model_Name_Autoprovision.txt* For Example: **9015-8GT2GS_***Autoprovision.txt*

The contents of the file are listed below:

AUTO_PROVISION_VER=1 Firmware_Upgrade_State=1 Firmware_Version=9015-000-1.1.0.S0 Firmware_Image_File=9015-000-1.1.0.S0.fw Firmware_Reboot=1 Global_Configuration_State=0 Global_Configuration_File=9015-000-1.1.0.S0.save Global_Configuration_Reboot=0 Specific_Configuration_Reboot=0

- 2. If AUTO_PROVISION_VER is biggest than current auto provision version, do step 3; otherwise, wait 24 hours and go back to step 1.
- 3. If the Firmware_Upgrade_State =1, do step 4; otherwise, do step 6.

- 4. If the Firmware_Version is difference than current firmware version, download the Firmware_Image_File and upgrade firmware.
- 5. If upgrade firmware succeeded and Firmware_Reboot=1, let reboot_flag=1.
- 6. If the Global_Configuration_State =1, download the Global_Configuration_File and upgrade configuration; otherwise, do step 8.
- 7. If upgrade configuration succeeded and Global_Configuration_Reboot =1, let reboot_flag=1.
- If the Specific_Configuration_State =1, download the specific configuration file and upgrade configuration; otherwise do step 10. The naming is "Model_Name_" with 12-bit MAC digits ,example for following is "NGI-M04C2_00e04c8196b9.txt"
- 9. If upgrade configuration succeeded and Specific_Configuration_Reboot =1, let reboot_flag=1.
- 10. If reboot_flag=1, save running configuration and reboot the switch; otherwise, wait 24 hours and go back to step 1.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show auto-provision	This command displays the current auto
		provision configurations.
configure	auto-provision	This command enters the auto-provision
		node.
auto-provision	show	This command displays the current auto
		provision configurations.
auto-provision	active (enable disable)	This command enables/disables the auto
		provision function.
auto-provision	server-addressIPADDR	This command configures the auto
		provision server's IP.
auto-provision	protocol (tftp http ftp)	The command configurations the upgrade
		protocol.
auto-provision	FTP-user username	The command configurations the username
	STRING password	and password for the FTP server.
	STRING	
auto-provision	folder STRING	The command configurations the folder for
		the auto provision server.
auto-provision	no folder	The command configurations the folder to
		default.
auto-provision	no FTP-user	The command configurations the username
		and password to default.

9.2.1. CLI Configurations

9.2.2. Web Configurations

D

	Auto Provision	
Auto Provision Setting	js	
State	Disable 🗸	
Status	Disabled	
Version	0	
Protocol	TFTP V	
Server IP	IPv4 🗸	
	0.0.0.0	
User Name		
Password		
Folder Path		
	Apply Refresh	

Parameter	Description	
Auto Provision Settings		
State	The field enables / disables the auto provision function.	
Status	The field displays the state machine status of auto provision.	
Version	The field displays the auto provision version of current system.	
Protocol	The field configures the protocol for file transfer.	
Server IP	The field configures the IP format.	
	The field configures the IP address of IPv4 or IPv6.	
User Name	FTP user name.	
Password	FTP password.	
Folder Path	Configurations the folder for the auto provision server.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

9.3. Mail Alarm

р

The feature sends an e-mail trap to a predefined administrator when some events occur. The events are listed below:

Alarm : The hardware monitor alarm.

Configuration Change	: The system configurations in the NV-RAM have been updated.
Firmware Upgrade	: The system firmware image has been updated.
Port Blocked	: A port is blocked by looping detection or BPDU Guard.
Port Link Change	: A port link up or down.
System Reboot	: The system warn start or cold start.
User Login	: A user login the system.

• Reference

Default Ports	Server	Authentication	Port	
SMTP Server	Non-Encrypted	AUTH	25 (or 587)	
	Secure (TLS)	StartTLS	587	
(Outgoing Messages)	Secure (SSL)	SSL	465	
POP3 Server	Non-Encrypted	AUTH	110	
(Incoming Messages)	Secure (SSL)	SSL	995	
Googlemail - Gmail	Server:	Authentication:	Port:	
SMTP Server	smtp.gmail.com	SSL	465	
(Outgoing Messages)	smtp.gmail.com	StartTLS	587	
POP3 Server	non amail aom	CCI	005	
(Incoming Messages)	pop.gmail.com	SSL	995	
Outlook.com	Server:	Authentication:	Port:	
SMTP Server	smtn live com	StartTLS	587	
(Outgoing Messages)	smtp.live.com	StartTLS		
POP3 Server	pop3.live.com	SSL	995	
(Incoming Messages)	pop5.nve.com		995	
Yahoo Mail	Server:	Authentication:	Port:	
SMTP Server	smtp.mail.yahoo.com	SSL	465	
(Outgoing Messages)	sintp.man.yanoo.com	552	-05	
POP3 Server	pop.mail.yahoo.com	SSL	995	
(Incoming Messages)	pop.man.yanoo.com		775	
Yahoo Mail Plus	Server:	Authentication:	Port:	
SMTP Server	plus.smtp.mail.yahoo.co	SSL	465	
(Outgoing Messages)	m	100	403	
POP3 Server	plus.pop.mail.yahoo.com	SSL	995	
(Incoming Messages)		100	,,,,	

9.3.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	show mail-alarm	This command displays the Mail
		Alarm configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node
		to configure node.

configure	mail-alarm (disable enable)	This command disables / enables the Mail Alarm function.
configure	mail-alarm auth-account	This command configures the Mail server authentication account.
configure	mail-alarm mail-from	This command configures the mail sender.
configure	mail-alarm mail-to	This command configures the mail receiver.
configure	mail-alarm server (ip domain- name) STRINGS server-port VALUE	This command configures the mail server IP address / domain name and the TCP port.
configure	mail-alarm server (ip domain- name) STRINGS server-port default	This command configures the mail server IP address / domain name and configures 25 as the server's TCP port.
configure	mail-alarm trap-event (reboot link- change config. firmware login port- blocked alarm) (disable enable)	This command disables / enables mail trap events.
configure	mail-alarm utf8-encoding (disable enable)	This command disables / enables the UTF8 encoding for mail content.

9.3.2. Web Configurations

Mail Alarm						
Mail Alarm Settings						
State Server Account Name Mail From Mail To UTF-8 Encoding Mail Event State:	Disable IP 0.0.0.0 Enable		Server Port Account Password	25	(Default:25)]
 Select All Alarm Configuration Firmware Upg Port Blocked Port Link Cha System Rebo User Login 	grade					
		Apply Refre	esh			

Parameter	Description
Mail Alarm Settings	
State	Enable / disable the Mail Alarm function.
Server	Selects one of below options: IP: The mail server's IP format is IPv4. Domain Name: The mail server's IP format is a domain name.
Server Port	Specifies the TCP port for the SMTP.
Account Name	Specifies the mail account name.
Account Password	Specifies the mail account password.
Mail From	Specifies the mail sender.
Mail To	Specifies the mail receiver.
UTF-8 Encoding	Enable / disable the UTF-8 encoding function.
Trap State	Enables / disables the mail trap event states.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.4. Maintenance

9.4.1. Configuration

9.4.1.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	write memory	This command writes current operating
		configurations to the configuration file.
configure	archive download-config	This command downloads a new copy
	<url path=""></url>	of configuration file to replace the
		<i>startup-config</i> from TFTP server.
		Where <url path=""> can be:</url>
		ftp://user:pass@192.168.1.1/file
		http://192.168.1.1/file
		tftp://192.168.1.1/file
configure	archive upload-config <url< td=""><td>This command uploads the current</td></url<>	This command uploads the current
	PATH>	startup-config configurations file to a
		TFTP server.
configure	archive download-running-	This command downloads a new copy
	config <url path=""></url>	of running configuration file from
		TFTP server.
		Where <url path=""> can be:</url>
		ftp://user:pass@192.168.1.1/file
		http://192.168.1.1/file
		tftp://192.168.1.1/file
configure	reload default-config	This command copies a <i>user-default-</i>
		<i>config</i> file to replace the <i>startup-config</i>
		file.
		Note: The system will reboot
		automatically to take effect the
~		configurations.
configure	archive download-config	This command downloads configure
	URL_PATH user-default-	file to <i>user-default-config</i> .
~	config	
configure	copy factory-default-config to	This command copies <i>factory-default-</i>
~	user-default-config	config file to user-default-config file.
configure	copy startup-config to user-	This command copies the <i>startup</i> -
	default-config	config file to user-default-config file.

There are three configuration files:

- startup-config.
- user-default-config.
- factory-default-config.

- When users execute the command, *write memory*, the system will save all of the running configurations to *startup-config* file.
- When the Switch boot up, it will load *startup-config* as the system configurations.
- When users execute the command, *reload default-config*, the system will copy *user-default-config* to *startup-config*.
- How to build your own default configuration file?
 - 1. You can prepare a configuration file and then do below command, *archive download-config URL_PATH user-default-config*
 - 2. You can login the system with console/Telnet/Http. And then follow below procedures:
 - To setup all configurations what you want.
 - Do the command, *write memory*, to save them to *startup-config* file.
 - Do the command, copy startup-config to user-default-config, to copy startupconfig file to user-default-config file.
- The *factory-default-config* file for user special propose.

9.4.1.2. Web Configurations

	Maintenance				
Configuration	Firmware	Reboot	Server		
Save Configuration	_	_	_	_	
Save the parameter	settings of the Switch :				
Save					
Upload and Download Configuration					
Upload configuration file to your Switch. File path Choose File No file chosen Upload					
O Press "Download" to save configuration file to your PC. Download					
Reset Configuration					
Reset the factory default settings of the Switch : - IP address will be 192.168.0.254 Reset					

Save Configurations



Press the Save button to save the current settings to the NV-RAM (flash).

Upload / Download Configurations to /from a your server



Follow the steps below to save the configuration file to your PC.

- Select the "Press "Download" to save configurations file to your PC".
- Click the "Download" button to start the process.

Follow the steps below to load the configuration file from your PC to the Switch.

- Select the "Upload configurations file to your Switch".
- Select the full path to your configuration file.
- Click the Upload button to start the process.

Reset the factory default settings of the Switch

```
Reset the factory default settings of the Switch :
- IP address will be 192.168.0.254
```

Press the Reset button to set the settings to factory default configurations.

9.4.2. Firmware

9.4.2.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to
		configure node.
configure	archive download-fw <url< td=""><td>This command downloads a new copy</td></url<>	This command downloads a new copy
	PATH>	of firmware file from TFTP / FTP /
		HTTP server.
		Where <url path=""> can be:</url>
		ftp://user:pass@192.168.1.1/file
		http://192.168.1.1/file
		tftp://192.168.1.1/file
configure	archive ipv6-download-fw	This command downloads a new copy
	<url path=""></url>	of firmware file from IPv6 TFTP / FTP
		/ HTTP server.
		Where <url path=""> can be:</url>
		ftp://user:pass@192.168.1.1/file
		http://192.168.1.1/file
		tftp://192.168.1.1/file

configure	archive download-secondary-	This command downloads a new copy
C	fw <url path=""></url>	of firmware file for secondary image
		from TFTP / FTP / HTTP server.
		Where <url path=""> can be:</url>
		ftp://user:pass@192.168.1.1/file
		http://192.168.1.1/file
		tftp://192.168.1.1/file
configure	archive ipv6-download-	This command downloads a new copy
	secondary-fw <url path=""></url>	of firmware file for secondary image
		from IPv6 TFTP / FTP / HTTP server.
		Where <url path=""> can be:</url>
		ftp://user:pass@192.168.1.1/file
		http://192.168.1.1/file
		tftp://192.168.1.1/file

9.4.2.2. Web Configurations

Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the **File path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. Click **Upgrade** to load the new firmware.

		mannee			
Configuration	Firmware	Reboot	Server		
Upgrade Firmware	Upgrade Firmware				
File path Choose	File No file chosen	Upgrade			

9.4.3. Reboot

9.4.3.1. CLI Configurations

Node	Command	Description
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	reboot	This command reboots the system.

9.4.3.2. Web Configurations

Reboot allows you to restart the Switch without physically turning the power off. Follow the steps below to reboot the Switch.

Maintenance				
Configuration	Firmware	Reboot	Server	
Reboot	_	_	_	
Press "Reboot" to re	start the Switch.			
Reboot				

• In the **Reboot** screen, click the **Reboot** button. The following screen displays.

The page at 192.168.20… 🗵
It will reboot the Switch.
Are you sure?
OK Cancel

• Click **OK** again and then wait for the Switch to restart. This takes up to two minutes. This does not affect the Switch's configuration.

9.4.4. Server Control

The function allows users to enable or disable the HTTP or HTTPS or SNMP v1/v2c or SNMP v3 or SSH or Telnet service individual using the CLI or GUI.

Notice:

SNMP state v.s snmp_v1v2c v.s snmp_v3

- The global SNMP state has the highest priority.
- If the global SNMP state is disabled, the snmp v1 / v2c / v3 will be disabled.
- If the global SNMP state is enabled, you can disable the snmp v1/v2c or snmp v3 individually.

9.4.4.1. CLI Configurations		
Node	Command	Description
enable	show server status	This command displays the current server status.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	http server	This command enables the http on the Switch.
configure	no http server	This command disables the http on the Switch.
configure	http server port	This command configures the TCP port for the
-	VALUE	HTTP server.
configure	no http server port	This command resets the HTTP TCP port to 80.
configure	https server	This command enables the https on the Switch.
configure	no https server	This command disables the https on the Switch.
configure	ssh server	This command enables the ssh on the Switch.
configure	no ssh server	This command disables the ssh on the Switch.
configure	telnet server	This command enables the telnet on the Switch.
configure	no telnet server	This command disables the telnet on the Switch.
configure	telnet server port	This command configures the TCP port for the
	VALUE	TELNET server.
configure	no telnet server port	This command resets the TELNET TCP port to 23.

9.4.4.1. CLI Configurations

9.4.4.2. Web Configurations

Maintenance				
Configuration Fin	mware	Reboot	Server Contro	4
Server Control Settings				
HTTP Server State	Enable 🗸	HTTP Se	erver TCP Port	80 (80,1025~9999)
HTTPS Server State	Enable 🗸			
SNMP v1/v2c Server State	Enable 🗸			
SNMP v3 Server State	Enable 🗸			
SSH Server State	Enable 🗸			
TELNET Server State	Enable 🗸	TELNET	Server TCP Port	23 (23,1025~9999)
		Apply Refresh		
Server Control Status				
HTTP Server Status	Enabled	HTTP Se	erver TCP Port	80
HTTPS Server Status	Enabled			
SNMP v1/v2c Server Status	Enabled			
SNMP v3 Server Status	Enabled			
SSH Server Status	Enabled			
TELNET Server Status	Enabled	TELNET	Server TCP Port	23

Parameter	Description
Server Settings	
HTTP Server State	Selects Enable or Disable to enable or disable the HTTP service.
HTTP Server TCP Port	Configures the TCP port for the HTTP service.
SSH Server State	Selects Enable or Disable to enable or disable the SSH service.
Telnet Server State	Selects Enable or Disable to enable or disable the Telnet service.
TELNET Server TCP Port	Configures the TCP port for the Telnet service.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.5. Sys log

The syslog function records some of system information for debugging purpose. Each log message recorded with one of these levels, **Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Information.** The syslog message can be recorded in local NV-RAM or be sent to Syslog server. If you have configured server's IP address and have enabled the Syslog server function, the Switch will send a copy to the syslog server. The default setting of the Syslog server is disabled.

The log message file is limited in 2000 entries. If the log count reach to the 2000, the oldest one will be replaced.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show syslog	The command displays the entire log message
		recorded in the Switch.
enable	show syslog level	The command displays the log message with the
	LEVEL	LEVEL recorded in the Switch.
enable	show syslog server	The command displays the syslog server
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	clear syslog	The command clears the syslog message.
configure	syslog-server	The command disables / enables the syslog server
	(disable enable)	function.
configure	syslog-server ipv4-ip	The command configures the syslog server's IP
	IPADDR	address in IPv4 format.
configure	syslog-server ipv6-ip	The command configures the syslog server's IP
	IPADDR	address in IPv6 format.
configure	syslog-server facility	The command configures the syslog facility level.
configure	archive upload-	This command uploads the syslog file to a TFTP
	syslog <url path=""></url>	server.
configure	archive ipv6-upload-	This command uploads the syslog file to a IPv6
	syslog <url path=""></url>	TFTP server.

9.5.1. CLI Configurations

Example:

L2SWITCH#configure terminal L2SWITCH(config)#syslog-server ipv4-ip 192.168.200.106 L2SWITCH(config)#syslog-server enable

9.5.2. Web Configurations

	Syslog	
Syslog Se	rver Settings	
Server IP	IPv4 V Disable V	
	Apply	
	Арру	
Syslog		_
Sysiog		
Log Level	All Show Refresh	Clear Save
	1999 Nov 12 10:00:57 4001c:Update System Firmware Succeeded! 1999 Nov 12 10:03:45 60004:System Warm Start!	^
	1999 Nov 12 10:03:47 40005:Port 6 Link Up.	
	1999 Nov 12 10:05:43 60001:User(q) Login Succeeded!	
	1999 Nov 12 10:16:40 40004:Port 6 Link Down.	
<4>	1999 Nov 12 10:17:06 40005:Port 6 Link Up.	
<4>	1999 Nov 12 10:45:16 40004:Port 6 Link Down.	
<4>	1999 Nov 12 10:45:43 40005:Port 6 Link Up.	
	1999 Nov 12 11:11:09 4001c:Update System Firmware Succeeded!	
	1999 Nov 12 11:14:02 60004:System Warm Start!	
	1999 Nov 12 11:14:04 40005:Port 6 Link Up.	
	1999 Nov 12 11:14:13 60001:User(q) Login Succeeded!	
	1999 Nov 12 11:30:37 4001c:Update System Firmware Succeeded!	
	1999 Nov 12 11:37:55 60003:System Cold Start! 1999 Nov 12 11:37:57 40005:Port 2 Link Up.	
	1999 Nov 12 11:37:57 40005:Port 2 Link Up. 1999 Nov 12 11:38:00 40005:Port 8 Link Up.	
	1999 Nov 12 11:38:00 40005:Port 6 Link Up.	•
	1999 Nov 12 11:38:41 be9968e4:User(q) Login Succeeded!	
	iss hat it insert sesseriese (4) togin succeeded	

Parameter	Description
Server IP	Select IP type for the server's IP. Enter the Syslog server IP address. Select Enable to activate switch sent log message to Syslog server when any new log message occurred.
Facility	Selects the facility level
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Log Level	Select Alert/Critical/Error/Warning/Notice/Information to choose which log message to want to see.
Clear	Click Clear to clear all of log message.
Save	Click Save to save all of log message into NV-RAM.

9.6. User Account

The Switch allows users to create up to 6 user account. The user name and the password should be the combination of the digit or the alphabet. The last admin user account cannot be deleted. Users should input a valid user account to login the CLI or web management.

User Authority:

The Switch supports two types of the user account, admin and normal. The **default** user's account is **username (admin) / password (admin)**.

- admin read / write.
- normal read only.

; Cannot enter the privileged mode in CLI.

; Cannot apply any configurations in web.

The Switch also supports backdoor user account. In case of that user forgot their user name or password, the Switch can generate a backdoor account with the system's MAC. Users can use the new user account to enter the Switch and then create a new user account.

Default Settings

Maximum user account	: 6.
Maximum user name length	: 32.
Maximum password length	: 32.
Default user account for privileged mode	: admin / admin.

Notices

The Switch allows users to create up to 6 user account.

The user name and the password should be the combination of the digit or the alphabet. The last admin user account cannot be deleted.

The maximum length of the username and password is 32 characters.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show user account	This command displays the current user
		accounts.
enable	show dot1x username	This command displays the dot1x user accounts.
configure	add user	This command adds a new user account with
	USERNAME	choice of privileges normal/admin/dot1x.
	PASSWORD	
	(normal admin dot1x)	
configure	delete user	This command deletes a present user account.
	USERNAME	
configure	dot1x username	This command creates a user account for DOT1X
	USERNAME	local authentication.
	PASSWORD	
configure	no dot1x username	This command removed a user account for
	USERNAME	DOT1X local authentication.

9.6.1. CLI Configuration

9.6.2. Web Configuration

User Account			
User Account Sett	ings		
Username User Password User Authority	Admin 🗸	ply Refresh	
User Account List			
No.	Username	User Authority	Action
1	admin	Admin	Delete
2	q	Admin	Delete

Parameter	Description	
User Account Settings		
User Name	Type a new username or modify an existing one.	
User Password	Type a new password or modify an existing one. Enter up to 32 alphanumeric or digit characters.	
User Authority	Select with which group the user associates: admin (read and write) or normal (read only) for this user account.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
User Account List		
No.	This field displays the index number of an entry.	
Name	This field displays the name of a user account.	
Authority	This field displays the associated group.	
Action	Click the Delete button to remove the user account. Note: You cannot delete the last admin accounts.	

9.7. Device management

The Topology map uses the LLDP, ONVIF and Manual Registration data to draw the map.

9.7.1. LLDP

The Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) specified in this standard allows stations attached to an IEEE 802® LAN to advertise, to other stations attached to the same IEEE 802 LAN, the major capabilities provided by the system incorporating that station, the management address or addresses of the entity or entities that provide management of those capabilities, and the identification of the station's point of attachment to the IEEE 802 LAN required by those management entity or entities.

The information distributed via this protocol is stored by its recipients in a standard Management Information Base (MIB), making it possible for the information to be accessed by a Network Management System (NMS) using a management protocol such as the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

Node	Command	Description
enable	show lldp	This command displays the LLDP configurations.
enable	show lldp neighbor	This command displays all of the ports' neighbor
		information.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
configure	lldp (disable enable)	This command globally enables / disables the
		LLDP function on the Switch.
configure	lldp tx-interval	This command configures the interval to transmit
		the LLDP packets.
configure	lldp tx-hold	This command configures the tx-hold time which
		determines the TTL of the Switch's message.
		(TTL=tx-hold * tx-interval)
configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface configure node.
interface	lldp-agent	This command configures the LLDP agent
	(disable enable rx-	function.
	only tx-only)	disable – Disable the LLDP on the specific port.
		enable – Transmit and Receive the LLDP packet
		on the specific port.
		tx-only – Transmit the LLDP packet on the
		specific port only.
		rx-only – Receive the LLDP packet on the specific
		port.
config	interface range	This command enters the if-range configure node.
	gigabitethernet1/0/	
	PORTLISTS	

9.7.1.1. CLI Configuration

if-range	lldp-agent	This command configures the LLDP agent
	(disable enable rx-	function.
	only tx-only)	disable – Disable the LLDP on the specific port.
		enable – Transmit and Receive the LLDP packet
		on the specific port.
		tx-only – Transmit the LLDP packet on the
		specific port only.
		rx-only – Receive the LLDP packet on the specific
		port.

Example:

L2SWITCH(config)#interface gigabitethernet1	/0/ 1
L2SWITCH(config-if)# <i>lldp-agent disable</i>	
Success!	

L2SWITCH(config)#interface range gigabitethernet1/0/ 1-3 L2SWITCH(config-if-range)#*lldp-agent enable* Success!

9.7.1.2. Web Configuration

	De	vice Management	
LLDP	anual Registration	ONVIF	
LLDP Settings	_	_	
State Tx Interval Tx Hold Time To Live		Range: 1-3600) Ige: 2-100)	
LLDP Neighbor Informati		Apply Refresh	
		Local Port 2	
Remote Port ID	GigabitEthernet1/	0/8	
Chassis ID	00-06-67-89-68-a	2	
System Name L2SWITCH			
System Description Tripp Lite Corporate./NGI-M08C4POE8-2/V1.0.0.S0/Thu May 13 11:10:15 CST 2021			
System Capabilitie	s Bridge/Switch (er	Bridge/Switch (enabled)	
Management IP	IPv4: 192.168.20	2.62	

Parameter	Description
LLDP Settings	

State	Globally enables / disables the LLDP on the Switch.
Tx Interval	Configures the interval to transmit the LLDP packets.
Tx Hold	Configures the tx-hold time which determines the TTL of the Switch's message. (TTL=tx-hold * tx-interval)
Time To Live	The hold time for the Switch's information.
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
LLDP Neighbor Inform	ation
T 1D (
Local Port	The local port ID.
Remote Port ID	The local port ID. The connected port ID.
	-
Remote Port ID	The connected port ID.
Remote Port ID Chassis ID	The connected port ID. The neighbor's chassis ID.
Remote Port ID Chassis ID System Name	The connected port ID. The neighbor's chassis ID. The neighbor's system name.

9.7.2. Manual Registration

If devices do not support LLDP and ONVIF, user has to enter the details of it by manually under manual registration. The function supports four types, IP-Cam, PLC, Switch and PC.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show manual-registration-device	This command displays
		the manual registration
		device configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes
		the node to configure
		node.
configure	manual-registration-device type	This command
	(ipcam plc switch pc) mac MACADDR ip	configures a device for
	IPADDR product-name STRINGS	the Topology Map.
	system-name STRINGS	
configure	no manual-registration-device mac	This command removes
	MACADDR	a device from the
		Topology Map.

9.7.2.1. CLI Configurations

9.7.2.2. Web Configurations

	Device Management						
2	LLDP	Manual Reg	jistration O	NVIF			
N	lanual Regi	istration Settings					
	Type IP-Cam	MAC Addres	s IP	Produc	ct Name	System Name	
	Apply Refresh						
N	Manual Registration Table						
	Туре	MAC Address	IP	Product Name	System	Name Action	
	IP-Cam	00:0b:04:11:22:33	192.168.202.154	Justin_PC	L2SWI	TCH Delete	

Parameter	Description
Manual Registration Settings	
Туре	The kind of devices connected to switch.
MAC Address	The MAC address on the device.

Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Manual Registration Table	
Туре	The kind of devices connected to switch.
MAC Address	The MAC address on the ONVIF device.
Action	Whether to delete entered device or not.

9.7.3. ONVIF

ONVIF is an open industry forum that provides and promotes standardized interfaces for effective interoperability of IP-based physical security products.

The Switch use ONVIF to discovery if there is ONVIF device connected to the Switch.

ONVIF settings and ONVIF Neighbor

The page show the detail information about ONVIF settings and ONVIF devices connected to the Switch. The Switch displays ONVIF devices up to total port count, NGI-M04C2 shows up to 10 ONVIF devices connected to it. If one or more ONVIF devices are connected to the same port it displays the last ONVIF device gets connect to it.

Node	Command	Description
enable	show onvif	This command displays the ONVIF
		configurations.
enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure
		node.
config	onvif enable	This command enables the ONVIF on the Switch.
config	onvif tx-interval	This command configures the tx interval for the
	<6-3600>	ONVIF.
config	no onvif enable	This command disables the ONVIF on the Switch.
config	no onvif tx-interval	This command reset the tx interval to default for
		the ONVIF. (Default: 6 seconds)

9.7.3.1. CLI Configurations

9.7.3.2. Web Configurations

	Device Management
LLDP	Manual Registration ONVIF
ONVIF Settings	
State Tx Interval (sec)	Disable V 6 (6~3600) Apply Refresh
ONVIF Neighbors	
Parameter	Description
ONVIF Settings	-

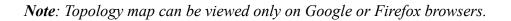
State	Select option to enable / disable the ONVIF feature on the Switch.	
Tx Interval	Configures the sending ONVIF discovery packet interval. Valid range is 6 ~ 3600 seconds.	
Apply	Click Apply to take effect the settings.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to begin configuring this screen afresh.	
ONVIF Neighbor Information		
Port	The connected port of the ONVIF device.	
IP Address	The IP address of the ONVIF device.	
MAC Address	The MAC address on the ONVIF device.	
VLAN ID	The VLAN ID of the ONVIF device join.	
Product Name	Name of the product added.	
Product Type	What kind of product that is added.	
Model	Model of the product.	
Location	Location where it is placed.	

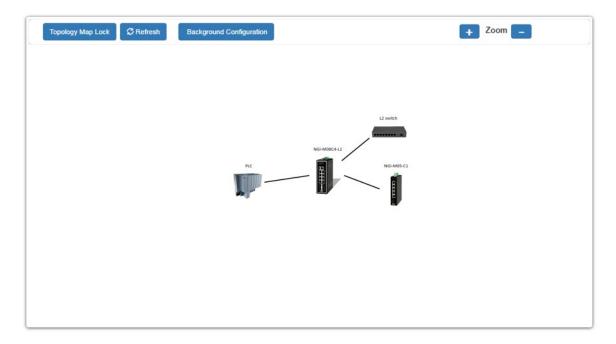
Address of the web service of that camera.

Web Service Address

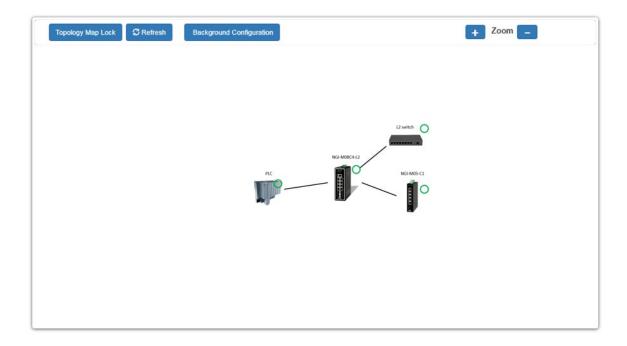
9.8. Topology Map

The Topology map is a feature to check neighbor devices' information or to configure them easily. Click on the Topology map and the system will display its topology as shown below. All devices connect to the Switch directly and support for LLDP will display on the screen. In the diagram below, the NGI-M05-C1 is its neighbor device. When moving the mouse indicator over the NGI-M05-C1 icon, it will display information about the NGI-M05-C1. Left click on the NGI-M05-C1 icon. The browser will connect to the NGI-M05-C1. If the neighbor device is a Switch that supports the Netlite server function, right click on the mouse. The menu will display on the screen and you can click an item for which you want to configure the Switch.





When you click the "Topology Map Lock", the screen will appear as below: The green circle on the devices indicates they are working normally.



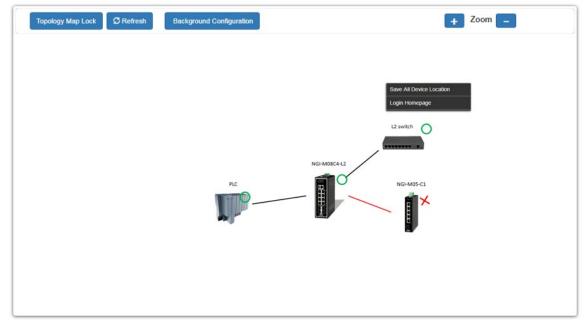
You can view the basic details of the devices connected to the host, by placing the cursor on it.

Topology Map Lock	C Refresh	Background Configuration		+ Zoom -	
			IP Address:	192.168.202.136	
			Mac Address:	00:06:67:00:00:0b	
			Product Name:	NGI-M08C4-L2	
			System Name:	NGI-M08C4-L2	

When there is something wrong with the devices, the screen will appear as below. In doing so, you can find the details of events that have gone wrong and correct them.

Topology Map Lock Ø Refresh	Background Configuration	+ Zoom -
	Pic	L2 switch NGI-MOBC4-L2 NGI-MOBC4-L2 NGI-MOBC4-L2 NGI-MOBC4-L2

The red 'X' indicates that connection is lost with the host.



9.8.1. Background Configuration

You can upload your company floor layout plan picture in to the background image so that you can identify easily where the switches has been placed.

- Background	Preview	
Picture	Preview -	◆ Zoom -
Upload image file in GIF/PNG/JPG/BMP format. file size upto 10 KB, 1140*625 pixels		
Choose File No file chosen Upgrade		
Apply Refresh Exit Default		

• Picture

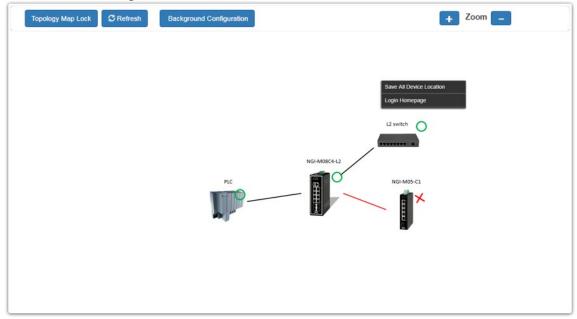
To choice a file which you want to display it in the background and the Preview window will display your select immediately. If you click the "Upgrade" button, the file will be download to the Switch and it will be applied on next reboot.

• Color

Allow user to select standard color for the background and the Preview window will display your select immediately.

9.8.2. Client-Switch Management

By right clicking on the neighbor non-Lite management switch (L2 Switch), you get this menu and can configure as shown below.



Non-Lite management switch and other devices menu:

- Save All Device Location To fix the location of all devices on the map, so that it restores its places after refresh.
- Login Homepage

To login to the client device Homepage, and make necessary changes after entering suitable username and password.

10. MISC

10.1. Cable Test

This feature determines the quality of the cables, shorts, and cable impedance mismatch, bad connectors, termination mismatch, and bad magnetics. The feature can work on the copper Ethernet cable only. The cable testers can measure the signal strength and attenuation of the cable during transmission.

Note: Cable test is only accessible through the CLI without any GUI support.

Node	Command	Description
Enable	configure terminal	This command changes the node to configure node.

10.1.1. CLI Configurations

configure	interface IFNAME	This command enters the interface
		configure node.
Interface	show cable-test result	This command displays the cable
		test result.
Interface	cable-test start	This command starts to test the
		cable.

WARRANTY & PRODUCT REGISTRATION

3-Year Limited Warranty

TRIPP LITE warrants its products to be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of three (3) years from the date of initial purchase. TRIPP LITE's obligation under this warranty is limited to repairing or replacing (at its sole option) any such defective products. To obtain service under this warranty, you must obtain a Returned Material Authorization (RMA) number from TRIPP LITE or an authorized TRIPP LITE service center. Products must be returned to TRIPP LITE or an authorized TRIPP LITE service center with transportation charges prepaid and must be accompanied by a brief description of the problem encountered and proof of date and place of purchase. This warranty does not apply to equipment which has been damaged by accident, negligence or misapplication or has been altered or modified in any way.

EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, TRIPP LITE MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not permit limitation or exclusion of implied warranties; therefore, the aforesaid limitation(s) or exclusion(s) may not apply to the purchaser.

EXCEPT AS PROVIDED ABOVE, IN NO EVENT WILL TRIPP LITE BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS PRODUCT, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE. Specifically, TRIPP LITE is not liable for any costs, such as lost profits or revenue, loss of equipment, loss of use of equipment, loss of software, loss of data, costs of substitutes, claims by third parties, or otherwise.

PRODUCT REGISTRATION

Visit www.tripplite.com/warranty today to register your new Tripp Lite product. You'll be automatically entered into a drawing for a chance to win a FREE Tripp Lite product!* * No purchase necessary. Void where prohibited. Some restrictions apply. See website for details.

Regulatory Compliance Identification Numbers

For the purpose of regulatory compliance certifications and identification, your Tripp Lite product has been assigned a unique series number. The series number can be found on the product nameplate label, along with all required approval markings and information. When requesting compliance information for this product, always refer to the series number. The series number should not be confused with the marketing name or model number of the product.

FCC Notice, Class A

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio

frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense. The user must use shielded cables and connectors with this equipment. Any changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by Tripp Lite could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Tripp Lite has a policy of continuous improvement. Specifications are subject to change without notice. Photos and illustrations may differ slightly from actual products.



1111 W. 35th Street, Chicago, IL 60609 USA • tripplite.com/support

21-07-009 933EE3_RevB